

#### PROJECT: 9722. - Veolia/Taunton WWTP Solids Handling Improvements

DATE: 03/08/2022

SUBMITTAL: 11305-02 - Thickened Sludge Pump O&M Manual REVISION: 0 STATUS: Eng SPEC #: 11305

#### TO:

**Carl Hendrickson** Veolia North America 125 S. 84th Street, Suite 175 Milwaukee, WI 53214 carl.hendrickson@veolia.com FROM: Ryan Murphy Hart Engineering Corporation 800 Scenic View Drive Cumberland, RI 02864 rmurphy@hartcompanies.com

Item	Revision	Description	Status	Date Sent	Date Returned
11305-02	0	Thickened Sludge Pump O&M Manual	Eng	03/08/2022	
Notes:					

Additional Notes:

#### **Status Codes**

1-APP – No Exceptions Taken
2-ANR – Make Corrections Noted
3-R&R – Revise and Resubmit
4-REJ – Rejected
5-IPO – For Information Purposes Only
6-NRR – Not Required for Review
ENG – Submitted to Engineer

Sincerely, Hart Engineering Corporation

DATE: 03/08/2022

## SEEPEX. All things flow

# **Progressive Cavity Pump Operation & Maintenance Manual**

Supply of **SEEPEX Inc**. pumps & accessories: consisting of engineering drawings, descriptive literature, operating data and related

<u>To:</u> Hart Engineering Corp. 800 Scenic View Dr. Cumberland, RI 02864 Phone: 401-658-4600

Taunton, MA-Veolia PO #: 9722.101

# SEEPEX Job #: P02010844

# Submittal for partial fulfillment of specification section: 11305 Thickened Sludge Pumps

# **Equipment List**

Application	Pump Type	Commission #
Thickened Sludge	BN 52-6LS	881591-881592

# **Represented Locally By:**

Aqua Solutions 154 W. Grove St. Middleboro, MA 02346 Phone: 508-861-0733

# Prepared By:

SEEPEX Inc. 511 Speedway Dr. Enon, OH 45323 Phone: 937-864-7150

# March 2022





# **Table of Contents**

<u> Tab:</u>	Section:	Page:
1	General	3
2	Safety	5
3	Transport and Intermediate Storage	7
4	Description of the SEEPEX Pump and Accessories	8
5	Assembly and Installation	9
6	Commissioning/De-commissioning	11
7	Service and Maintenance	14
8	Breakdown, Reasons, and Remedies	23
9	Auxiliary SEEPEX Documentation	
	Data Sheet: 881591-881592	25
	Characteristic Curve	28
	Dimensional Drawing	29
	Sectional Drawing	30
	Parts List	31
	Predicted Life/Recommended Spare Parts	33
	Universal Joint Protection	34
	SCT-Smart Conveying Technology	36
	TSE- Dry Running Device	54
	Operating Instructions for Mechanical Seal Arrangement	72
10	Manufacturer's Documents from Sub-supplier	
	Nord Gear Motor Operation Manuals	95
11	Miscellaneous	
	Terms and Conditions of Sales and/or Repair	169
	SEEPEX Service/Repair Contacts	170
	Installation Checklist	171
	Start-Up Plan	172
	Shut-Down Plan	173
	Long-term Storage/Preservation	174
12	Test Report(s)	
	881591 Test Reports	186
	881592 Test Reports	189

#### 1.0 General

#### 1.1 Application

These operating instructions contain basic information on the installation, commissioning and maintenance of seepex machines. Compliance with the work steps described in the individual sections is essential.

# 1.2 Details of the seepex machines

#### 1.2.1 Operating Instructions

The Commission Number (comm. no) assigns the operating instructions to a particular seepex machine. The operating instructions are produced in relation to a specific job/commission and are valid only for the machine whose comm. no. is identical with that indicated on the cover sheet and possessing the associated data sheet, Tab 9.

#### 1.2.2 Manufacturer

The machines were manufactured by seepex.

#### 1.2.3 Range, Size, Version

of the machines are stated in the appended data sheet, Tab 9.

# 1.2.4

Machine Comm. No. and Year of Construction

are stated on the type plate at the machine.

## 1.2.5

#### **Release Date of the Operating Instructions**

is stated on the cover sheet of the operating instructions.

#### 1.2.6 Modifications, Notes of Modification

If modifications to the machines are carried out in agreement with seepex, a new set of operating instructions will be provided, or the existing operating instructions will be supplemented by an additional sheet together with a new cover sheet. The date of modification and modification index will be noted on the new cover sheet.

#### 1.2.7 EEC Machine Directive

#### 1.2.7.1 Manufacturer's Declaration

seepex Manufacturer's Declaration as required by the EEC Machine Directive 89/392/EEC, Appendix II B:

The seepex machines delivered in accordance with our design are intended to be fitted in one machine or assembled together with other machines to form one machine/plant. The commissioning of the machine is forbidden until such a time as has been established that the entire machine/plant satisfies the requirements of the EEC Directive for Machines as amended 91/368/EEC and 93/44/EEC.

Particular attention must be paid to the safety requirements specified in EN809 (s and Equipment for Fluids) as well as the information in these operating instructions.

## 1.2.7.2 Declaration of Conformity

seepex machines possessing no safety accessories do not fulfill the requirements of the EEC Machine Directive 89/392/EEC as amended 91/368/EEC and 93/44/EEC.

For this reason, no Declaration of Conformity as required by the EEC Machine Directive 89/392/EEC, Appendix IIA can be issued before appropriate safety devices have been installed/mounted on the machine and/or plant with due regard to the information given in these operating instructions.

The following harmonized standards are particularly applicable:

EN 809, EN292T1, EN292T2 Applicable national standards and specifications must be taken into consideration.

Following assessment of the conformity of the machine/plant with the EEC Machine Directive, customers may on their own initiative place on the full machine/plant the EEC symbol 'CE' as defined in Identification Directive 93/68/EEC.

## CAUTION

This documentation must be kept available for at least 10 years.

# Ausgabe B / 02.01.2006 Dokument OM.GEN.01e Blatt sheet

#### 1.2.8

#### **Copyright and Industrial Property Rights**

These operating instructions are copyrighted. The reproduction, in particular by photocopying, of these instructions is not permitted (§§ 54, 54 UrhG) and constitutes a criminal offence (§ 106 UrhG). Proceedings will be instituted if the copyright is violated.

#### 1.2.9

#### **Specifications Required for Inquiries and Orders**

The following information must be included when inquiring about replacement parts or placing orders: - comm. no.

- / machine type

This information is given on the type plate mounted the machine.

**1.2.10 Technical Data Sheet** see Tab 9.

#### 1.2.11 Performance Data, Load Index, Power Consumption

are indicated in the associated data sheet, Tab 9.

#### 1.2.12 Sound Pressure Level

The sound pressure level and/or noise characteris-tics of the seepex machines are ascertained in accordance with DIN 45635. The measuring guidelines are largely identical with the international standards ISO 3740-1980 and ISO 3744-1981.

#### 1.2.13 Operating Range

Employment of the machine is not permissible for purposes other than those stated in the data sheet, see Tab 9. seepex cannot accept liability for damage arising through failure to comply with this operating range.

1.3 Supplementary Information

1.3.1 Accessories, Optional Extras

Please refer to the data sheet, Tab 9.

#### 1.3.2 Company Address, Service Addresses

see Tab 11

#### 2.0 Safety

These operating instructions contain basic requirements to be observed during the installation, operation and maintenance of the machine. Therefore, the instructions must be read by the mechanical fitter and by the technical personnel/operator responsible for the machine prior to assembly and commissioning, and kept available at the operating site of the machine/plant at all times.

Compliance is required not only with the general safety instructions given in this section but also with the detailed instructions, e.g. for private usage, given under the other main headings in these operating instructions.

#### 2.1

#### Labeling of Advice in the Operating Instructions

In these operating instructions safety advice whose non-observance could lead to danger for life or limb is labeled with the following general hazard symbol:



safety symbol acc. to ISO 3864 - B.3.1

Warnings regarding electric power are labeled with:



safety symbol acc. to ISO 3864 - B.3.6

Safety instructions whose non-observance could jeopardize the machine and its functions are labeled by the word

## CAUTION

Always comply with instructions mounted directly on the machine, e.g.

- rotational direction arrow
- fluid connection indicators

and ensure that the information remains legible.

#### 2.2 Personnel Qualifications and Training

Personnel charged with operation, maintenance, inspection and assembly must be in possession of the appropriate qualifications for the tasks. The company operating the machine must define exact areas of responsibility, accountabilities and personnel supervision schemes. Personnel lacking the required skills and knowledge must receive training and instruction. If necessary, the opera-ting company may commission the manufacturer/ supplier to conduct these training courses. Furthermore, the operating company must ensure that the personnel fully understand the contents of the operating instructions.

#### 2.3

# Dangers Resulting from Failure to Observe Safety Instructions

Failure to comply with the safety instructions may lead to hazards to life and limb as well as dangers for the environment and the machine. Non-observance of safety instructions can invalidate the right of claim to damages.

The following are just some **examples** of possible dangers resulting from failure to comply with the safety instructions:

- Failure of important machine/plant functions
- Failure of prescribed methods of service and maintenance
- Danger to life and limb due to electrical, mechanical and chemical influences
- Danger to the environment due to the leakage of hazardous substances

#### 2.4

#### Safety-conscious Working

Always comply with the safety instructions listed in this document, the existing national accident prevention regulations and any company-internal work, operating and safety rules.

Ausgabe issue	C / 03.01.2006	Dokument document	OM.SAF.01e	Blatt sheet	
					_

#### 2.5 Safety Instructions for the Operating Company/Machine Operator

- Any potentially hazardous hot or cold machine parts must be provided with protection against accidental contact at the customer's premises.
- Protective guards for moving parts (e.g. coupling) must never be removed while the machine is in operation.
- Leakages (e.g. in the shaft seal) of hazardous conveying liquids (e.g. explosive, toxic, hot) must be drained in such a way that no danger arises for persons or for the environment. Always observe the relevant statutory requirements.
- The risk of exposure to electrical power must be eliminated (for details, see the VDE regulations, for example, or those of the local power supply company).

#### 2.6

# Safety Instructions for Maintenance, Inspection and Assembly Work

The operator must ensure that all maintenance, inspection and assembly tasks are carried out by authorized and qualified personnel who have studied the operating instructions closely and become sufficiently familiar with the machine.

As a basic rule, the machine must be brought to a standstill before work is carried out. Always comply with the de-commissioning procedure described in this document.

Any machiness or assemblies conveying media that are detrimental to health must be decontaminated.

Immediately following completion of work, all safety and protective devices must be replaced in position and, where applicable, re-activated.

Before re-starting the machine, observe the points listed under the heading "Initial Startup".

#### 2.7

# Unauthorized Modification and Manufacture of Replacement Parts

Conversions or modifications of the machine are permissible only in consultation with the manufacturers. Original manufacturer replacement parts and manufacturer-approved accessories enhance the operational safety of the machine. The usage of unauthorized parts may lead to the nullification of the manufacturer's liability for any resultant damages.

#### 2.8

#### Impermissible Modes of Operation

The operational safety of the machines supplied is warranted only for employment in accordance with the intended use as defined in Section 1 - General of these operating instructions. Never allow the threshold values specified in the data sheet to be exceeded.

Ausgabe ssue	C / 03.01.2006	Dokument document	OM.SAF.01e	Blatt sheet
ssue	C/03.01.2006	document	OWI.SAF.UTe	sheet

#### 3.0 Transport and Intermediate Storage

#### 3.1 Safety Precautions

Employ appropriate transport means, hoists and tools when transporting and storing the machine, always observing the safety instructions.

#### 3.2 Transport

Depending on its weight, the seepex machine must be transported manually or with appropriate transport means. Comply with the transport instructions on the packing.

#### 3.3 Unpacking

The design of the packing is such that the equip-ment can be removed manually or, if demanded by the weight, by means of appropriate hoists.

Any screw fittings between the machine and the packing must be undone. Comply with the attached information notices and symbols.

#### 3.4

#### Intermediate Storage/Preservation

Unless otherwise indicated in the data sheet, seepex machines are provided with preservation only for the duration of transport. If a long period of intermediate storage is foreseen before the machine is commissioned, it is necessary to pro-vide supplementary preservation. If necessary, the appropriate measures should be drawn up in consultation with seepex.

Intermediate storage in extreme climatic conditions is permissible only for machine whose design is appropriate to the circumstances. If necessary, seepex must be consulted.

# CAUTION

Pumps of the range MAP If the period from supply and subsequent storage until the commissioning is more than 4 weeks, the hoses should be dismantled, refer to Tab 7.

#### 3.5

#### **Protection against Environmental Influences**

To afford protection against environmental influences, the intermediate storage location must be dry, enclosed and free from frost.

#### 4. Description of the seepex Progressive Cavity Pump and Accessories

#### 4.1

#### General Description, Design and Mode of Operation

Like all progressive cavity pumps, seepex pumps belong to the rotating positive-displacement pump family. The characteristic attribute of these pumps is the special formation and arrangement of the two conveying elements, namely the rotor and the stator.

The difference in the number of threads possessed respectively by the rotor and stator produces a chamber that opens and closes alternately in line with the constant turning motion of the rotor, effecting the continuous transportation of the conveying product from the suction side to the pressure side.

The geometrical formation of the two conveying elements combined with the constant contact that exists between them result in sealing lines that effect an airtight seal between the suction and pressure side in every position of the eccentric screw, even when the pump is stationary. The pump owes its high suction capacity to this sealing between the suction and pressure sides.

## 4.2 Mechanical Design

Please consult the sectional drawing, Tab 9, for the mechanical design of the pump. The data sheet, Tab 9, gives information on the design of the pump housing, stator, rotor and rotating components.

Refer to document OM. SEA. 02e, for information on the design of the shaft seal.

The data sheet, specifies details of the design of the drive engine. Further details are given in the appended manufacturer's documents, Tab 10.

#### 4.3 Accessories

Consult the data sheet for information.

#### 4.4 Dimensions, Weight

Consult the appended dimensional drawing,

#### 4.5 Design Variants

Refer to the data sheet, Tab 9, for the design of the seepex progressive cavity pump. Other design variants are possible, whereby seepex must first check whether a particular pump is suitable for the intended purpose.

#### 4.6

#### **Operating Site Specifications**

Operating site specifications are listed in the data sheet, Tab 9. Details of the space required for installation, operation and maintenance are given in Section 5.2.1.

Ausgabe	P / 02 01 2006	Dokument	OM DES 010	Blatt
ssue	B/02.01.2000	document	OWI.DES.016	sheet

#### 5.0 Assembly / Installation

#### 5.1 Mounting Tools / Hoists

No special tools are required for the assembly and installation of the pump.

The customer must check the dimensions and weight of the seepex progressive cavity pump to ascertain whether the available hoisting apparatus is sufficient for the assembly and fitting of the pump.

#### 5.2 Initial Assembly

# 5.2.1 Inspection Prior to Commencement of Assembly

#### 5.2.1.1 Location

The place of installation for the pump must con-form with the site stated in the data sheet in Tab 9. Any change of location must be checked and approved by seepex.

#### 5.2.1.2 Space Requirements

Customers are responsible for determining the space requirements; the following factors must be taken into consideration:

- dimensions and weight of the machine
- required transport and hoisting equipment
- possible piping layout with allowance for the space allowing disassembly of the rotor as defined in 5.2.1.3
- freedom of movement to: operate the drive / speed regulation read speed and pressure indicators adjust a stator retensioning device, if fitted operate a buffer fluid supply unit, if fitted
- space required for lubrication / renewal of lubricants
- disassembly of mechanical protective devices, e.g. V-belt or coupling protection
- space required for handling the mounting tools, e.g. sufficient wall clearance

#### 5.2.1.3 Space Allowing Disassembly of Stator P

A specific space must be allowed for exchanging the stator. The required dimension "P" is indicated on the GA drawing, Tab <u>9.</u>\_\_\_\_\_

# CAUTION

Ensure also that the pipe work can be dismounted at this location too.



# Installation of the Fully Assembled Pump

- □ Installation in conformity with data sheet Installation of the pump is permissible only in accordance with the data sheet specifications and the associated basic drawing, see Tab 9. Any change in the position must be checked and approved by seepex.
- □ Tension-free mounting of pump This rule applies to pumps with and without drives, to versions with and without baseplate, for mounting on the foundation or other bearing elements. The entire area of all bearing surfaces of the machine must rest on the ground. Any unevenness must be corrected by appropriate supports.
- · Correct seating of drives

All drives have been aligned ready for operation and mounted by seepex. However, displace-ments may occur during transport or installation. For this reason, check that the alignment and fastening of the drive and coupling are correct.

Protective devices On completion of the assembly and installation work, immediately mount all safety and protective devices in their proper locations and set them in operation.



# 5.2.3 Protective and Controlling Equipment

Information on equipment of this nature, where fitted, is provided in the data sheet, Tab 9. Consult the attached manufacturer's specifications, Tab 10, for instructions on assembly and installation.

#### 5.2.4 Electric Connection of Electric Motor and Frequency Converter

The electric connections must be established in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, Tab 10, as well as the safety specifications applying at the installation site. The mains voltage and frequency must match the ratings indicated on the type and rating plates.



Switch on electric motor "direct-on-line"

CAUTION

An increased starting torque is necessary due to the clamping between the rotor and stator conveying elements. This means the electric motors that drive the progressive cavity pumps must always be switched on directly. As a rule, star-delta startup is not possible unless special arrangements have been made with seepex.

#### Three-phase cage motor



... voltage indicated on rating plate

□ Speed regulation via frequency inverter When progressive cavity pumps with frequencycontrolled drives are started up problems may occur due to unsuitable or wrongly set frequency inverters. For this reason we recommend the purchase of the complete drive, including frequency inverter, from seepex, so that the frequency inverter can be tuned on the seepex test field along with a trial run. Ensure that customer-supplied frequency inverters comply with the starting torque and running power specified in the appended data sheet, Tab 9. CAUTION

Consult the appended document TI.FRU.01, see Tab 9, for further information on the electric connection and the setting of frequency inverter and variable-speed motor.

5.2.5 Piping

#### 5.2.5.1 Suction and Pressure Flanges

The position, nominal width and standard of the suction and pressure flange of the progressive cavity pump are specified in the dimension drawing, Tab 9, and data sheet, Tab 9. Always observe the rotational direction and flow direction defined in section 6.2.5.

## 5.2.5.2

#### Piping Dimensioning CAUTION

The pipe diameters on the suction and pressure sides must be dimensioned in accordance with the customer's pressure-loss calculation in such a way that the pressures specified in the data sheet, Tab 9, are not exceeded. The nominal width of the suction pipe should at least match that of the pump suction flange.

## 5.2.5.3

# Residue-free Piping

**CAUTION** Prior to starting up the pump, ensure that all pipelines are free from foreign bodies. Installation residues (such as weld spatter, screws, steel chips etc.) will lead to damage of the **seepex** pump for which guarantee claims will not be accepted.

#### 5.2.5.4

# Tension-free Mounting

CAUTION

Pipelines and other components requiring to be connected with the pump must be mounted without stresses.

## 5.2.5.5

#### **Fluid Connections for Optional Extras**

Consult the data sheets, Tab 9, for information regarding the optional extras, if any, that are fitted. The technical description is given under Tab 9.

Ausgabe	B / 02.01.2006	Dokument	OM.INS.01e	Blatt	
Issue		uocument		Sheet	

#### 6.0 Commissioning/De-commissioning

#### 6.1 Engineering Data

Details regarding all technical specifications and operating conditions are given in these operating instructions together with the data sheet, Tab 9.

To guarantee the correct assignment of documentation to pump, the commission number on the

- cover sheet
- and data sheet of these operating instructions must match the commission number stated on
- the nameplate of the pump.

## 6.1.1

See section 7.2.2 for Lubricant Chart

6.2 Preparation for Operation

#### 6.2.1 Bearing

**6.2.1.1** See section 7.2.1.4 for pump bearing.

#### 6.2.1.2

See manufacturer's documents, Tab 10, for drive bearings.

#### 6.2.2 Shaft Sealing

See document OM.SEA.02e

#### 6.2.3

Filling Up of Suction Side to Avoid Dry Running at Startup

# CAUTION

Before switching on the pump, fill the suction-sided pump casing with fluid so that the first rotations will lubricate the conveying elements immediately. A small quantity of fluid is sufficient for lubrication; the subsequent operation of the pump is self-priming, even if an air column up to the liquid level remains.

#### 6.2.4 Electric/Hydraulic Connections

The connections are listed in the appended manufacturer's documents, Tab 10.

The risk of exposure to electrical hazards must be ruled out. Always observe the safety regulations valid at the site of installation.

# $\triangle$

#### 6.2.5 Checking Direction of Rotation

The rotational direction of the pump determines the flow direction of the conveying medium.



Prior to commissioning the rotational direction of the pump must be checked for compliance with the data sheet specification and the rotational direction arrow on the type plate of the pump.

#### 6.3 Control and Monitoring Equipment

Where applicable, please refer to the associated documents, Tab 10, for information on commissioning.

#### 6.3.1 Performance Check

Any optional extras must be subjected to a performance check in conformity with the specifications by seepex or other manufacturers, see manufacturer's documents.

#### 6.3.2 Setting

Unless already performed in the factory, setting must be carried out in accordance with the appended manufacturer's specifications, Tab 10. Pay attention to the operating specifications in the data sheet.



Ausgabe C / 02.01.2006 Dokument OM.COM.01e Blatt sheet

#### 6.4 Equipment for Protection of Persons

Machines must be fitted with mechanical protective devices complying with DIN EN 809.

- Moving or working parts must be protected against accidental contact.
- However, safety considerations demand it be possible at all times to check without hindrance whether the shaft seal is fully functional.
   A protective guard is necessary in this area only if components are mounted on the rotating, smooth shaft.



- If pumps are operated with an open suction flange/feed hopper, a suitable protective guard complying with DIN EN 294 must be mounted.
- Country-specific protective regu-lations must be observed at the site of installation.
   Prior to activation of the pump, check the proper function of all protective equipment.

#### 6.5 Commissioning

# 6.5.1 Initial Startup/Re-starting

# 

Every seepex progressive cavity pump is designed for the specific operating conditions documented in the data sheet. Commissioning is permissible only if the operating conditions conform with those indicated in the data sheet. Although the potential usages of the seepex pump are not confined to the specified operating conditions, any change in the original conditions must be checked and approved by seepex.

The right to make claims under the warranty agreement will be annulled if operating conditions are changed without prior approval by seepex.

#### 6.5.2 Avoid Dry Running of Pump

#### CAUTION

The dry running of a pump increases the friction between rotor and stator, quickly causing an unacceptably high temperature to develop on the inner surface of the stator. This overheating leads to burning of the stator material and the total failure of the pump. For this reason it is necessary to ensure that the suction-sided flow never dries up completely. If a continuous flow cannot be guaranteed for the plant, it is essential to fit the seepex dry running protection device TSE, available as an optional accessory.

#### 6.5.3

#### **Check Pressure at Suction and Pressure Flanges**

#### 6.5.3.1 Safeguard Pump Against Excessive Pressure at the Suction Flange

The seepex pump is designed to operate with the pressure at the suction flange (suction head or inlet pressure) specified in the data sheet. Deviating pressure conditions may lead to the failure and/or destruction of the shaft seal or entire pump.



For this reason the suction pressure specified in the data sheet must be guaranteed. Appropriate monitoring devices are oil-filled contact manometers that deactivate the pump.

#### 6.5.3.2

# Safeguard Pump Against Excessive Pressure at the Pressure Flange

The seepex pump operates according to the positive displacement principle. Operation of the pump against an excessive pressure caused by closed valves, by high pressure losses in the piping or by product sedimentation will lead to the destruction of the pump, drive, pipe work and/or downstream equipment. Every progressive cavity pump must therefore be protected against overpressure. Safety valves with bypass pipes or oil-filled contact manometers that disactivate the pump are appropriate protective devices.



#### 6.5.4 Drive Engine

Consult the attached manufacturer's operating instructions, Tab 10, for information on commissioning the drive engine.



Ausgabe C / 02.01.2006 Dokument OM.COM.01e Blatt sheet

#### 6.5.5

# Establish Clear Passage Through Pipelines

To prevent damage to the pump the unhindered flow of liquid must be guaranteed between the points of entry to and exit from the pipeline. For this reason, open all relevant valves etc. prior to activation of the pump.

#### 6.6 De-commissioning

#### 6.6.1 De-activation

The electric connections must be switched off and protected against accidental re-activation. Observe the safety regulations applying to the plants.



#### 6.6.2 Stationary Pump

The pump and all optional equipment must be provided with the following protection modes while at a standstill:

- Frost protection
- Protection against solid particle deposits
- Protection against sedimentation of the medium
- Corrosion protection for parts in contact with the medium

We recommend that the pipeline and pump be emptied for the duration of the plant standstill. Following evacuation, the pump should be preserved.

#### 6.6.3

#### **Evacuation of the Pump**

The pipeline must be evacuated on the suction and pressure side or shut-off directly behind the pump connections. Drain any residual liquid in the pump casing by opening/ removing the screwed sealing plugs (705) and (502), sealing rings (706) and (503). Casings without screwed plug must be evacuated by the connection branch (SAG and DRS). Refer to the data sheet and the sectional drawing of the associated operating instruction, Tab 9, for information on the pump design. Conveying medium residues always remain in the rotor/ stator chambers and may run out during transport or disassembly of the pump. If conveying aggressive or hazardous media, therefore, wear appropriate protective gear during all installation work.

#### 6.6.4 Disassembling the Pump

Dismantle the pipe work by removing the flange bolts (SCH) and flange seals (DFL) or the threaded connections (G).

Disassemble the pump together with the baseplate (GPU) or, as applicable, without the baseplate (GPU) following removal of the bolts (SCH) at the pump feet.

Block-design pumps with direct flangemounted drive engine are liable to become unstable during disassembly. Stability can be restored by propping up the drive engine.



SCH



#### 6.6.5 Preservation/Storage

The pump must be preserved prior to storage. Appropriate preservation measures must be agreed with **seepex**. Always state the pump commission number when making inquiries.

Ausgabe C / 02.01.2006 Dokument OM.COM.01e Blatt sheet

These operating instructions are valid for range BN size 05-24 to 300-6L

7.0 Service and Maintenance

Contents 7.1 General Instructions 7.2 Service and Inspection 7.3 Dismantling 7.4 Re-assembly

The sectional drawing and parts list relevant for section 7.3 and 7.4 can be found in Tab 9.

#### 7.1 General Instructions

A requirement for the reliable operation of any pump is service and maintenance in compliance with instructions. Maintenance personnel must therefore have access to these operating instruc-tions and adhere to them meticulously. seepex will accept no liability for damages arising through non-observance of these operating instructions.

#### 7.2 Maintenance and Inspection

7.2.1 Lubrication

#### 7.2.1.1 Rotor and Stator

The rotor and stator are lubricated by the conveying medium.

#### 7.2.1.2 Shaft Sealing

Consult document OM.SEA.<u>02e</u> for information on lubricating the shaft seal.

#### 7.2.1.3 Pin Joint

The pin joints are filled with special grease and lubricated for the expected duration of service. The seepex joint grease should be used exclusively for any required maintenance work.

## CAUTION

Usage of other grease types will lead to premature joint failure and render invalid any right to claims under guarantee.

#### 7.2.1.4 Bearing of the Pump/Drive Engine

The bearing of the rotating pump parts is effected by the drive engine. Lubrication instructions are therefore included in the appended drive engine operating instructions, Tab 10.

#### 7.2.2 Lubricant Filling Levels

Details are specified in the equipment sections.

#### 7.2.3 Drives and Optional Extras

For maintenance and inspection specifications, see the appended manufacturer's documents, Tab 10.



7.2.4 Supervision during Operation

7.2.4.1 Shaft Sealing

See document OM.SEA.02e.

#### 7.2.4.2 Optional Extras

These must be monitored in accordance with the separate documents, Tab 9/Tab 10.

#### 7.2.4.3 Drive Engines

These must be monitored in accordance with the separate manufacturer's documents, Tab10.

#### 7.2.5 Preventive Measures

To avoid the expenses incurred by lengthy stop periods of the pump, seepex recommends the acquisition of a set of wearing parts and a set of gaskets.

Ausgabe B / 02.01.2006 Dokument OM.MAI.02e Blatt sheet

#### 7.3 Dismantling the seepex Progressive Cavity Pump

The stator (601) and the rotating pump parts can be exchanged in site. The rotating pump parts can be dismantled as a complete rotating unit (RTE) (section 7.3.4) or as individual components (section 7.3.5).

Before commencing the dismantling of pump parts, safeguard the pump against tipping over or falling down by fastening it at the lantern (200).







Prior to dismantling see section 7.3.2 Before dismantling the stator (601), provide it with a support (S) to prevent it from falling.





Maintenance tip:

Disassembly of the stator can be made considerably easier by first moistening the inner surface of the stator with antiseize agent (soft or liquid soap). Before removing the pressure flange (700), pour the antiseize agent into the opening between rotor and stator on the pressure flange side. Several clockwise (see section 6.2.5) revolutions of the rotor will then distribute the antiseize agent over the inner surface of the stator and reduce the friction between rotor and stator considerably. Lock drive shaft against rotation. While dismantling the stator (601) prop up the rotor (600) with support (S) to prevent it from falling.



7.3.3 Suction Casing (500) - Dismantling

Fit the rotor (600) with a protective cover (SH) and underprop it with support (S) to prevent it from falling down.



#### 7.3.4 Rotating Unit (RTE) - Dismantling CAUTION

Before dismantling the rotating unit it is essential to comply with the specifications in document OM.SEA.02e (Shaft Seal Dismantling).

Remove flushing connections at shaft seal housing (SEA).

Raise/shift splash ring (310) and eject plug-in shaft pin (309) in horizontal direction.

Remove rotating unit (RTE)/plug-in shaft (307), together with shaft seal (SEA) from output shaft of the drive (ANT).

See in document OM.SEA.02e, for removal of the shaft seal (SEA) from the plug-in shaft (307).



Ausgabe	B / 02 01 2006	Dokument		Blatt
issue	D/02.01.2000	document	OWI.WAI.026	sheet

#### 7.3.5 Rotating Pump Parts - Dismantling

#### 7.3.5.1 Rotor (600), Coupling Rod (400)

Detach the rotor (600) and coupling rod (400) from the plug-in shaft (307) by dismantling the joint (G) in accordance with document OM.PJT.02.





The plug-in shaft (307) is removed in the same way as the rotating unit (RTE), see Point 7.3.4.





see document OM.PJT.02

#### 7.3.7 Shaft Sealing

See document OM.SEA.<u>02e</u>, for information on dismantling the shaft sealing.

#### 7.3.8

#### Lantern (200)/Drive (ANT) - Dismantling



#### 7.4 Re-assembly

Before commencing the re-assembly, fasten the lantern (200) in such a way that it cannot tip over or fall down during the re-assembly of the drive and all pump components.



#### 7.4.1 Lantern (200)/Drive (ANT) - Assembly

Clean flange bearing surfaces (FLS), centering diameter and output pivot of the drive (ANT).





The rotating unit (RTE) has been assembled in accordance with the description in document OM.PJT.02.

Mount shaft seal (SEA) on plug-in shaft (307) in the way described in document OM.SEA <u>02e</u>. Moisten splash ring (310) and plug-in shaft (307) with joint grease and slide splash ring (310) onto plug-in shaft (307), observing the fitting position of the splash ring, (see writing on the splash ring). Apply antiseize graphite petroleum to the output pivot of the drive (ANT) and slide on the rotating unit (RTE). Insert plug-in shaft pin (309) horizontally.

Splash ring position (310)

The collar of the splash ring should be mounted at a distance of 0.5 mm from the lantern (200).



7.4.3 Rotating Pump Parts - Re-assembly

Ausgabe	P / 02 01 2006	Dokument		Blatt	
issue	В/02.01.2000	document	OWI.IWAI.UZE	sheet	

Prepare main components:

Prepare rotor (600), coupling rod (400) and plug-in shaft (307) as described in document

OM.PJT.02, Point 2. to 2.3

Joint (G) re-assembly as described in document OM.PJT.02, Point 3.



7.4.4 Suction Casing (500), Casing Gasket (501) - Reassembly

Fit protective cover (SH) on rotor (600) and prop it up with support (S).





Maintenance tip:

Disassembly of the stator can be facilitated considerably by first moistening the inner surface of the stator with antiseize agent (soft or liquid soap). Before removing the pressure flanges (700), pour the antiseize agent into the opening between rotor and stator on the pressure flange side. Several clockwise (see Point 6.2.5) revolutions of the rotor will then distribute the antiseize agent over the inner surface of the stator and reduce the friction between rotor and stator considerably.

Lock drive (ANT) shaft against rotation. Turn stator (601) clockwise and simultaneously push it over rotor (600), propping up stator with support (S) at the same time.



#### 7.4.6 Pressure Flange (700) - Assembly CAUTION

Tighten tie bolts (602 and 603) in equally.



Ausgabe	D / 02 01 2006	Dokument		Blatt
issue	Б/02.01.2006	document	OWI.WAI.UZe	sheet

#### 1.0 Dismantling of Joint

1.1

Holding Band (406, 407) and Universal Joint Sleeve (405)

Cut through loop (SCL) of the holding bands (406 and 407) with a metal saw.

Wear protective goggles when squeezing out the two halves of the holding band loop (SCL).



Remove holding bands (406,407). Pull universal joint sleeve (405) off joint.



Retaining Sleeve (401) - Dismantling

- For rotors and plug-in shafts made of hardened and unhardened materials, knock back retaining sleeve (401)



- For rotors made of synthetic material, release set screw (426).



1.3 Separation of Joint

Eject coupling rod pin (402). Position coupling rod (400) at the correct angle (A) and drive both guide bushes (403) outwards. This releases the coupling rod (400), which can then be extracted.

# CAUTION

To guarantee the proper function of the joints, it is advisable to renew the coupling rod pins (402), guide bushes (403) and coupling rod bushes (404) all at the same time.



# 1.4

#### Coupling Rod Bushes (404) - Dismantling CAUTION

As a precaution against incorrect re-assembly of coupling rod bushes (404), we recommend the employment of coupling rods (400) whose coupling rod bushes (404) have been pressed in by seepex.

The coupling rod bush (404) is pushed out of the coupling rod (400)





Prepare main components for Re-assembly

#### 2.1 Rotor (600) - Preparation for Joint Assembly

First remove any burr, flaws or similar defects from the rotor, then clean it.

Ausgabe C / 02.01.2006 Dok	ument OM.PJT.02e Blatt sheet
----------------------------	------------------------------

#### 2.2 Coupling Rod (400) - Preparation for the Joint Assembly CAUTION

As a precaution against the incorrect re-assembly of coupling rod bushes (404), we recommend the employment of coupling rods (400) whose bushes (404) have been pressed in by seepex.

Press in new coupling rod bushes



□ Position of coupling rod bush (404)





correct pressed in centrically incorrect pressed in eccentrically result: joint fracture

Marking notches in (MK) in A-A axis permissible rotation 1,5°





correct pressed into A-A axis

incorrect pressed in rotated result: joint fracture

#### 2.3

# Plug-in Shaft (307) - Preparation for Joint Assembly

Remove any burr, flaws or similar defects from the plug-in shaft (307), then clean it.

# 3.0

Joint - Re-assembly CAUTION

To guarantee the proper function of the joints, it is advisable to renew the coupling rod pins (402), guide bushes (403) and coupling rod bushes (404) all at the same time.

□ Joint head on rotor (600) and plug-in shaft (307)

- Press guide bushes (403) in by only 2/3 of their length
- Fill joint head with joint grease (098)
- Slip on joint sleeve (401)



Coupling rod (400)
 Slide holding bands (406/407).
 Moisten inner surface of universal joint sleeve (405) with joint grease and slide it.
 Push coupling rod (400) into joint head.
 Push in coupling rod pin (402).



Guide bush (403) Press in



Ausgabe	C / 02 01 2006	Dokument		Blatt	
issue	C/02.01.2000	document	OWI.FJT.02e	sheet	

#### Retaining sleeve (401)



Securing of retaining sleeve

For drive shafts, plug-in shafts and rotors made of unhardened materials such as St 70, AISI 304, AISI 316, Hastelloy C, secure 2 x 180° offset indents



For rotors made of hardened materials such as tool steel (AISI D6), 1.2842, secure 2 x 180° offset indents



- For rotors made of synthetic material, secure using set screw (426). During this process, point of set screw presses into the synthetic surface (X). Set screw (426) is medium strengh secured by screw locking device /adhesive.



Universal joint sleeve (405) Remove air from interior of joint



Holding bands re-assembly Mount holding bands (406 and 407) as described in document OM.HBD.01.



Ausgabe issue	C / 02.01.2006	Dokument document	OM.PJT.02e	Blatt sheet	
					_

#### Holding Band (HBD) - Assembly

Prepare holding band

Only prefabricated double-band holding bands should be used. The diameter ( $\emptyset$ ) and in particular the breadth (b) of the holding band is matched to the universal joint sleeve.

#### Test holding band

The bent holding band (HBD) must fit against the holding band loop (SCL), if necessary apply pressure



#### Assembly of holding band

While holding one end of the holding band, hold free end with control lever (EX), turn crank (KU) until the holding band is strained and fitting against the holding band loop (SCL). Carefully contract holding band until it fits inside the circular groove of the universal joint sleeve.



#### Correct holding band tension (HBD)

Holding band

(HBD) is too

liable to slip.

slack and

HBD



Correct Holding band (HBD) has slightly contracted outer form of univers-al joint sleeve and is stuck in

position.

Incorrect Holding band (HBD) is too tight. Universal joint sleeve will be damaged/sheared off.

Folding back the holding band (HBD)

Slowly swivel mounting tool upward by 60°, at the same time slackening the crank (KU) by approximately one half revolution. Swivel cutting lever (SH) forward until the pressure plate fits against the holding band loop (SCL).



Ausgabe	B / 02 01 2006	Dokument	Blatt
issue	Б/02.01.2006	document	sheet

Shearing off holding band (HBD) made of material AISI 304 and AISI 316

A blow with the palm of the hand against the cutting lever (SH) causes the end of the holding band behind the loop (SCL) to be folded back and sheared off. If the holding band on the sheared off side is slightly raised as a result, it must be straightened carefully.

#### CAUTION

Never tap or hammer against the loop of the holding band (SCL), otherwise damage to the universal joint sleeve may occur.

HBD

Shearing off holding band (HBD) made of Hastelloy C

The high strength of this material makes it impossible to shear off the holding band (HBD) with the cutting lever (SH). Once the end of the holding band is folded back, cut off the holding band (HBD), file off projecting edges and remove burr.

Check after mounting of holding band

The holding band must run all the way round the groove of the universal joint sleeve.

The holding band (HBD) must be bent back and sheared off at the holding band loop (SCL) in such a way that the holding band (HBD) is unable to slip back through the holding band loop (SCL). If this has not been accomplished, then the holding band (HBD) must be replaced by a new one.

Ausgabe	P / 02 01 2006	Dokument	Blatt	
issue	В/02.01.2000	document	sheet	· ·

# Breakdown, Reasons, Remedies

Breakdown												
pump has no suction	pump conveys irregularly	the conveying capacity is not achieved	pressure is not achieved	pump does not start	pump has seized or has stopped conveying	pump operates noisily	motor becomes too warm	the stator wears out early	shaft sealing leaks	seepex progressive cavity pumps will operate trouble-free if they are used in accordance with our data sheet (see item 9) and our operating and maintenance instructions:		
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		Reasons / Remedies	
				Х			Х			а	(soft soap, genuine soap) between stator and rotor. Then turn the pump by means of the tool W2.	
Х										b	Check rotational direction of the pump per data sheet and nameplate. In case of wrong direction, change wiring of motor	
Х	Х	Х			Х	Х				С	Suction pipe or shaft sealing leak. Eliminate the leakage.	
х	х	Х				х				d	Suction head too high (item 6.5.3.1). Check suction head with vacuum gauge. Increase the suction pipe diameter and fit larger filters. Open the suction valve fully.	
Х	Х	Х								е	Viscosity of the liquid too high.	
		x		X			X			f	Wrong pump speed. Correct pump speed per data sheet.	
	Х	X		~			~			a Avoid inclusions of air in the conveying liquid.		
		Х		х	Х		Х	х		h	Pressure head too high (point 6.5.3.2). Check pressure head with manometer. Reduce the pressure head by increasing the pressure pipe diameter or by shortening the pressure pipe.	
Х	Х	Х			Х			Х		i	Pump runs partially or completely dry (point 6.5.2). Check flow in the suction chamber. Install dry running protection TSE	
						х	х			j	Check coupling, possibly pump shaft is misaligned to drive. Check whether coupling gear is worn. Realign coupling. The coupling gear has perhaps to be replaced.	
Х		Х								k	Speed too low. Increase the speed when high suction performances are	
X	Х					Х					required and when the liquid is very thin. Speed too high. Reduce the speed when pumping products with high viscosities - danger of cavitation	
						Х				m	Check the axial play in the coupling rod linkage. Check that the bush has been installed correctly see document OM.PJT	
Х		Х		Х	Х			Х		n	Check for foreign substances in the pump. Dismantle the pump, remove foreign substances and replace worn parts.	
Х		Х	Х		Х					0	Stator or rotor worn. Dismantle the pump and replace defective parts.	
Х		Х			Х	Х				р	Joint parts worn. Replace worn parts and fill with special pin joint grease	
Х		Х			Х			Х		q	Suction pipework partially or completely blocked. Clean suction pipework.	
Х				х	Х		х	х		r	Temperature of the pumping liquid too high. Excessive expansion of the stator. Check temperature and install rotor with diameter smaller than specified.	
Х		Х		Х			Х		Х	s	Gland packing too strongly tightened or worn. Ease or tighten stuffing box. Replace defective packing rings.	
Х				Х	Х			Х		t	Solid contents and/or size of solids too large. Reduce pump speed and install perhaps a screen with suitable meshes. Increase fluid share.	
Х				Х				Х	Х	u	When the pump is non operational the solids settle out and become hard. Clear and flush the pump immediately.	
Х				Х	Х			Х	Х	v	The liquid becomes hard when temperature falls below a certain limit. Heat the pump.	
				Х	Х		Х	Х		W	stator material. Use perhaps rotor with diameter smaller than specified.	
						Х			Х	х	The bearing in the drive casing of the pump or in the drive engine is defective. Replace bearing.	
									Х	у	replace corresponding defective parts.	

Ausgabe	B / 02 01 2006	Dokument	OM REC 01e	Blatt	
issue	D/02.01.2000	document	OWNINEOROTO	sheet	

9.0

**Auxiliary SEEPEX Documentation** 

Order No.

Data sheet

Version 1

P02010844 881591-881592

ltem 10



SEEPEX Inc. 511 Speedway Drive Enon, OH 45323 Phone (937) 864-7150 sales.us@seepex.com www.seepex.com

U 000 SLB003

#### SEEPEX

qty:2

Order No. Date Commission no. Offer No. Customer Purchase order no. Project P02010844 7/14/2021 881591-881592 500214077/2 - 10 Hart Engineering Corporation 9722.101 Taunton, MA - Veolia

thickened sludge

# Progressive cavity pump BN 52-6LS / A1-C1-L8-F0-GA

Application data Conveyed product Flowability Viscosity Solids content Size of solids Density Product temperature pH value Kind of operation Operating hours Location Altitude of installation Surrounding temperature

flowable low viscosity (< 500 cP/mPas) 2-5% $\leq 2 mm$ unknown, 1 kg/dm<sup>3</sup> assumed  $32^{\circ}F - 113^{\circ}F$ 5-9continuous 8 h/day indoor, dry atmosphere up to 1000 m assumed normal (32-104 °F)

#### Performance data

	Capacity 50 USGPM 140 USGPM 190 USGPM	<b>Pressure</b> 22 psi 22 psi 22 psi	<b>Speed</b> 87 rpm 240 rpm 325 rpm	min norm max	
Starting torque Req. operating power at pump shaft Inlet pressure NPSHr	285 lb.ft 6 HP flooded suctior 15.77 ft	285 lb.ft 6 HP flooded suction (up to 0,5bar) 15.77 ft			
	Tolerances ac	cording to SEI	EPEX standar	ds.	
Materials and executions Installation Direction of rotation	horizontal counter clockw	<i>r</i> ise (left)			
Lantern - Design Lantern - Material Lantern - Flange diameter	with cover plat EN-JL 1040 (g 250 mm	es ci-25)			
Suction casing - Design Suction casing - Material	cleanouts on b EN-JL 1040 (g	oth sides ci-25)			
Pressure branch - Design Pressure branch - Material	standard EN-JL 1040 (g	ci-25)			
Position of branch Suction connection Pressure connection	position 1 NPS 5, drilled NPS 5, drilled	acc. to ASME acc. to ASME	B 16.5, Class B 16.5, Class	150, RF 150, RF	
Joint - Design Joint - Material Joint - Universal joint sleeve: material	rotorsided UJ- standard, hold NBR - Perbuna	sleeve prot. 1. ing bands 1.43 an	4404, divided 301		

Order No.

Data sheet

881591-881592

#### Version 1

# Item 10

P02010844

Joint - Joint Grease **Coupling rod - Design** Coupling rod - Material Rotor - Design Rotor - Undersize **Rotor - Material Rotor - Coating** Stator - Design Stator - Material Shaft sealing Code Shaft diameter Make Rotating/stationary seal face Elastomers Spring Metal parts Type Casing - material Casing - connection standard Plug-in Shaft - Design Plug-in Shaft - Material Plug-in Shaft - Drilling diameter Plug-in Shaft - Drilling depth **Bolting - Design** 

Painting - Number of colors **Painting - Painted components** Painting - Color Painting - Surface protection

#### Drive

**Drive Type** 

Туре Make Model **Mounting position** Ratio (i) Speed

Flange diameter Shaft diameter Shaft length Shaft drawing

Speed Motor speed Frequency

Rated output Power factor Rated speed Starting Efficiency class Voltage Frequency Rated current

joint grease SEEPEX 30321 standard 1.4021 / AISI 420 Smart Rotor-design Smart Rotor-design 1.0503 (C45) / AISI 1045 ductile chromium coating smart stator design, with TSE, sensor sleeve 1.4404 NBR - Perbunan mechanical seal GA - single acting mechanical seal 70 mm SEEPEX SiC SiC FPM 1.4571 / AISI 316Ti 1.4571 / AISI 316Ti GA Q1Q1 VGG 1.4408 / ASTM A351 grade CF8M NPT standard 1.4021 / AISI 420 40 75 standard single-colored standard complete combination Standard Enamel (SEEPEX Blue) std. surface protection C2 (NDFT 95 µm)

SEEPEX.

ALL THINGS FLOW

Gear motor at freq. inv.

Gearmotor Nord SK42F-132MP/4 M1 5.1 346 rpm

250 mm 40 mm 80 mm 716/0170-002B4

Norm 184 rpm 1236 rpm 42 Hz

87 rpm 459 rpm 15 Hz

Min

Max 325 rpm 1677 rpm 56 Hz

10 HP 0.77 1765 rpm direct on frequency inverter premium efficiency 230/460 V 60Hz 26,7 / 13,4

Order No.	P02010844	SEEPEX.		
Data sheet	881591-881592		ALL THINGS FLOW	
Version 1	ltem 10			
Thermal class Enclosure	F IP55			
Baseplate Design Material GPU Type Code	baseplate for b design with side steel, painted B-ST-LS	lock pump, e feet		
TSE Design Voltage Temperature coefficient	standard desig - sensor sleeve pump with inte - connection he - separate TSE mounting insic 110-115 V / 50- NTC	n, complete fitted to the stator of the egrated temperature sensor ad (IP55) control device suitable for de a control panel 60 Hz		
Material sensor sleeve Material connection head	1.4404 / AISI 3 aluminium	16L		
Quality Assurance Design Document Standard QA Testing Mode	HI Hydrostatic (150% working SEEPEX form I SEEPEX stand	Fest pressure for 5 minutes) FO.QA.35e ard		
Quality Assurance Design Document Standard QA Testing Standard QA Testing Mode	API Performand (test at 30%, 60 SEEPEX form I API 676 SEEPEX stand	ce Test 0%, 90% & 100% of rated capa FO.QA.42e ard	acity)	
<b>Documentation</b> Dimensional drawing Sectional drawing Mechanical seal drawing Operation Manual	262-C18/0520- 062-062D1 262-0GA/0170- 2 x Print Englis	S-721A4 0-084A3 h (US)	-	

# Characteristic Curves Size **52–6LS**





Values based upon water 68°F ; For notes on drive selection refer to PER

CHA.52-6LS\_4, C 05.15us

80 1/4" [2038.5] 26 19/32" 53 21/32' [1363] А [675.5] 40 23/32" ANSI B16.5 150 lbs RF 13 13/16" DN 5" [1034] [350.5] DN 5" 5 13/16" 8″ ANSI B16.5 [147.5] [203] 150 lbs RF А 13/32 ¢10 1/8" [257.5] [290] Ħ 14 7/8" [377.7] Φ  $\equiv$ 5 1/2" [140] 6 7/8" [175] 8 31/32" [227.7] 8200 3 7/16" 8001 8100 [87.7] 1/4" [6.4] Ø3/4' • ÷ 10 7" 177.8] [279.4] 9" [228.6 1 • 47" 3″ [76.2] [1193.8] flow flow 53 5/32"  $\sim$ CCW CW dimensions in [...] are in millimeter Var.: 801-200/0520-A-100 8200 22 1 baseplate: drive: Nord SK42F-132MP 8100 112 1 pump: BN 52-6LS 8001 166 1 Denomination Item Material Note Weight / kg Quant. Day 2017 Name Scale Weight Denomination SEEPEX. 12.04. ⊚⊳ 1:20 300 kg dimensional drawing eba Drawn EDP-No. Drawing-no. **ALL THINGS FLOW** 262-C18/0520-S-721A4 Checked ISh 13.04. 162477.dwg

Copyright: This drawing is our property and patented for us according to the law of copyright and associated rights

General tolerances for dimensions without specified tolerances acc. to DIN ISO 2768-v

#### verbindlich für Kommissions-Nr.: binding for comission-no.: 881591-881592





			DE	EN	FR	
			Baureihe BN	Range BN	Série BN	
			Schnittzeichnung Nr. 062-062D1	sectional drawing no. 062-062D1	plan no. 062-062D1	
Stok	De		Benennung Stok / Bos	denomination	désignation	
SICK.	FC	JS.	SICK. / POS.	Qty. / item		
1	20		Laterne	lantern		
1	20	02	I ypenschild	type plate	paique signalitique	
4	2	10	okt-Schraube	hexagon bolt	VIS	
4	2	11	okt-Schlaube	nexagon boll	VIS randella frain	
4	2	12	Federing Ekt Mutter	bevegen put		
4	2	10	Abdockbloch		tâle de protection	
2	2-	40	Zylinderschraube	socket screw	vis à tâte cylindrique	
4	24	42	Eederring	spring washer	rondelle frein	
4	2-	43 07	Steckwelle	plug-in shaft	arbre à broche	
1	30	na	Steckwellenholzen	plug-in shaft nin	cheville pour arbre à broche	
1	31	10	Spritzring	splash ring	baque de projection	
1	40		Kunnelstange	coupling rod	barre d'accouplement	
2	40	00	Gelenkhülse	retaining sleeve	douille d'articulation	
2		02	Kuppelstangenholzen	coupling rod pip	ave d'articulation	
2 	40	02	Führungsbuchse	quide bushing		
2		0.0	Kunnelstangenbuchse	coupling rod bushing	chemise d'ave	
2	40	05	Manschette	universal joint sleeve	manchette	
2	-40	00	Halteband	bolding band	collier de serrade	
2	40	07	Halteband	holding band	collier de serrage	
1			Sauggebäuse	suction casing	carter d'aspiration	
1	50	00	Sauggehäusedichtung	casing dasket	étanchéité du carter d'aspiration	
3	50	02	Verschlussschraube	screwed plug	bouchon de vidende	
3	50	02	Dichtring	sealing ring	joint d' étanchéité	
1	50		6kt-Schraube	beyagon bolt		
4	50	07	Fächerscheibe	fan type lock washer	rondelle à dents chevauchantes	
4	50	07	Tacherscheibe	Tail type lock washel		
1	50	na	6kt-Mutter	beyagon nut	écrou	
- 7	e) 51	10	Reinigungsdeckel	cleanout	couvercle de nettovage	
2	) 51	11	Dichtung	asket	étanchéité	
2	) 51 °) 51	12	6kt-Schraube	beyagon bolt	vie	
2	) 51	16	Verschlussschraube	screwed plug	houchon de vidange	
2	) 51 °) 51	17	Dichtring	sealing ring	joint d' étanchéité	
1	56	61	O-Ring		joint torique	
1	60		Botor	rotor	rotor	
2	60	00	Statorhälfte	statorhalf	stator moitié	
2 1	60	20	Stiftschraube	stud bolt	boloun fileté	
4	62	20	Scheibe	washer	rondelle	
	62	23	6kt-Mutter	bexagon nut	écrou	
2	<sup>1)</sup> 62	22	Stiftschraube	stud bolt	boloun fileté	
2 	63	35	Finstellsegment	adjusting segment	segment d'ajuster	
8	63	36	Stiftschraube	stud holt	boloun fileté	
8	63	37	Scheibe	washer	rondelle	
8	62	30	6kt-Mutter	hexagon put	écrou	
1	6/	40	Rotorkonf	rotor head	tête de rotor	
1	6/	41	Rotorkonfholzen	rotor head nin	boulon de tête de rotor	
1	6/	42	O-Ring	o-ring	ioint torique	
1	6/	43	Sicherungsring	circlin	circlin	
1	69	82	Stützring	support ring		
1	60	83   83	Sicherungsblech		arrêt à aileron	
1	67	71	Segmentaufnahme	segment retainer	récention de segment	
1	67	72	Segmentaufnahme	segment retainer	récention de segment	
I	01	12	ocymentaumanme	segment retainer	reception de segment	



		DE	EN	FR
		Baureihe BN	Range BN	Série BN
		Schnittzeichnung Nr. 062-062D1	sectional drawing no. 062-062D1	plan no. 062-062D1
		Benennung	denomination	désignation
Stck.	Pos.	Stck. / Pos.	Qty. / Item	Qté. / Poste
1	700	Druckstutzen	pressure branch	bride de refoulement
1	705	Verschlussschraube	screwed plug	bouchon de vidange
1	706	Dichtring	sealing ring	joint d' étanchéité
4	718	Stiftschraube	stud bolt	boloun fileté
4	720	6kt-Mutter	hexagon nut	écrou
4	721	Scheibe	washer	rondelle
1	731	O-Ring	o-ring	joint torique
	098	SEEPEX Gelenkfett	SEEPEX joint grease	SEEPEX graisse d' articulations
		Typ und Füllmenge:	type and filling quantity:	sommaire pour type et quantité:
		Betriebs- und Montageanleitung	see Operating and Assembly	voir Instructions de montage et de
		entnehmen	Instruction	fonctionement
		Verschleißteile und Dichtungen:	Wearing parts and sealings:	pièces d'usure et étanchéités:
		Betriebs- und Montageanleitung	see Operating and Assembly	voir Instructions de montage et de
		entnehmen	Instruction	fonctionement
		Werkzeuge:	Tools:	Outils:
		Betriebs- und Montageanleitung	see Operating and Assembly	voir Instructions de montage et de
		entnehmen	Instruction	fonctionement
		Wellenabdichtung	shaft sealing	dispositif d' etanchéité
		siehe Schnittzeichnung	see sectional drawing	voir vue éclatée
		Gleitringdichtung	mechanical seal	garniture mécanique
	1)	bei Baugrößen	for sizes	pour taille
		52-6LS, 70-6LS, 103-6LS,	52-6LS, 70-6LS, 103-6LS,	52-6LS, 70-6LS, 103-6LS,
		130-6LS	130-6LS	130-6LS
		versetzt gezeichnet	drawn displaced	plan separé
	°)	Option	option	option

# SEEPEX. ALL THINGS FLOW

When ordering parts from SEEPEX, call ahead and get a quote. The Commission No. is needed. Phone: 937-864-7150 Fax: 937-864-7157

Part Designation	2 Years	5 Years	Gasket	Corresponding Part Number
	Number		Set	to Sectional Pump Drawing
Plug-in shaft		1		_307_
Plug In Shaft Pin		1		_309_
Splash ring		1		_310_
Mechanical Seal	Subject to use and application			_330_
Coupling Rod w/		1		400
coupling rod bushing		1		_+00_
Universal Joint Kit		2		_401-407_
Casing Gasket			1	_501_
Rotor		1		_600_
Stator Half	1	1		_601_
Stator Half/w TSE	1	1		_601_
Holding Band Tool			1	spec_

# Predicted Life / Recommended Spare Parts



#### 1. Intended application of universal joint protector (408)

The universal joint protector prevents irreparable damage of the joint seal (universal joint sleeve) when unpermitted solid particles enter the suction casing of the pump via the pumping flow.

#### 2. Installation conditions for the universal joint protector (408)

The following conditions must be fulfilled when installing the universal joint protector:

- Suction casing with enlarged cross section
  - Use a design with enough space in the area of the rotor-sided joint.

#### 3. Universal joint protector (408) - divided version

#### 3.1 Use with pumps of series T

- Design applies to coupling rod (400) with auger feed screw (TPS).
- Installation without joint separation possible.



#### 3.2 Use on pumps of size N with special coupling rod

- Design applies to coupling rod (400) with impeller (RFL) or auger feed screw (TPS).
- Installation without joint separation possible.



#### 4. Assemble universal joint sleeve (408)

- Mount and secure universal joint protector (408) with screw fitting (409, 410).
  - Use bolt locking agent/glue "medium-hard".
- Cover screw fitting (409) with rubber base (413).





- Assemble holding band (411) on rubber base (413).
- Mount additional holding band (412) on the universal joint protector (408) to secure it.


# 9.1 Pump with Smart Conveying Technology - SCT

Range:	BN
Size:	52-6LS to 130-6LS

Version: New pump

Table of contents:

9.1.1 Stator, R	otor - dismantling - SCT
-----------------	--------------------------

- 9.1.2 Rotor, stator reassembly SCT
- 9.1.3 Pump dismantling SCT
- 9.1.4 Pump reassembly SCT
- > For rotor/stator dismantling/reassembly, see chapters 9.1.1 and 9.1.2.
- > For pump dismantling/reassembly, see chapters 9.1.3 and 9.1.4.

# 9.1.1 Stator (601), rotor (600) - dismantling - SCT

#### 9.1.1.1 Preparing the pump for dismantling

	A DANGER
	Dangerous voltage. Death or serious injury can occur.
17	Note safety regulations.
	Disconnect pump from all sources of energy.
	Secure electrical connections against restarting.
	Allow pipelines to cool

- Allow pipelines to cool.
- See chapter 6 of the operating and assembly instructions for instructions regarding decommissioning.



No space needs to be left for stator removal when dismantling/reassembling the stator and rotor.

#### 9.1.1.2 Stator (601) - Dismantling



Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

- The holding device for the dry running protection (TSE) can get in the way when dismantling the adjusting segments (635).
- If this is the case, remove the holding device (657) and the self-tapping screws (658).



# 9 Dismantling/reassembly

635.o 635.0 639 637 TSE 658 635 65 601.o 637 639 635.u

#### Remove upper adjusting segments (635.0).

- Conveying product can escape.



Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

 Mount self-tapping screws (658) and holding device (657).

- Remove upper half of the stator (601.o).
   Conveying product can escape.
- ➢ Dismantle adjusting segments (635.u).
  - Secure adjusting segments (635.u) to prevent them from falling down.
- Remove lower half of the stator (601.u) smoothly.
  - Conveying product can escape.

### 9.1.1.3 Rotor (600) - dismantling



Ausgabe		Dokument	OM SCT 020	Blatt
issue	D/04.02.2013	document	011.301.020	sheet

WZ 643 682

600

W7

600

643 682 642

600

683

640



- Spread the circlip (643) wide enough so that it can be released.
  - Use tool (WZ).
- Slide circlip (643) towards rotor (600).
- Slide support ring (682) towards rotor (600).
- Remove the lock washer (683).
  - Use a suitable tool (WS).
- > Remove rotor (600) from rotor head (640).
- Remove support ring (682), circlip (643) and O-ring (642) from rotor (600).

### 9.1.2 Rotor (600), stator (601) - reassembly - SCT

### 9.1.2.1 Rotor (600) - reassembly

- Insert O-ring (642) in rotor (600) groove.
- Slide circlip (643) and support ring (682) onto rotor (600).
  - Note the fitting position of support ring (682).
- Coat the inner surfaces of the rotor head (640) with graphite petroleum.
- Slide rotor (600) into rotor head (640).



Ausgabe		Dokument	OM SCT 020	Blatt
ssue	D/04.02.2013	document	011.301.020	sheet

#### Page 38



- Use tool (WZ).
- Secure support ring (682) with circlip (643).



# 9.1.2.2 Stator (601) - Reassembly



- For easier assembly, moisten sealing surfaces, geometry of the stator halves and rotor with soft soap.
  - Do not moisten the outer surfaces of the stator with soft soap.

#### NOTICE

#### Coating the stator outer surfaces Damage to property can occur

- Remove any coating on the stator outer surfaces.
- Coat only the stator internal surfaces.

Tool (W29/lifting equipment incl. lashing strap)

601.u

- Secure rotor (600).
  - Use tool (W29).
- > Attach the lower half of the stator (601.u).
- Press the stator half (601.u) onto the tapered surfaces of the segment receiver (671) and align it.
- Avoid damage to the stator surfaces.
- The tapered stator surface (601.u) is in contact with the segment retainer (671) tapered surface.
- Observe the segment order.
   \* = A-A, B-B, C-C, D-D
- Secure the lower half of the stator (601.u).
  - Fix the lower adjusting segments (635) to the segment retainer (671).
- Tighten the screws until the adjusting segments (635) interlock with the guide of the segment retainer (671) (detail x).

Tool (W29/lifting equipment incl. lashing strap)

➢ Remove the tool (W29).



Ausgabe issue	D/04.02.2013	Dokument document	OM.SCT.02e	Blatt sheet	

Page 40

600 W29





- > Attach the upper half of the stator (601.o).
- Align the long side of the upper half of the stator (601.0) to the lower half of the stator (601.u).

Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

- The holding device for the dry running protection (TSE) can get in the way when dismantling the adjusting segments (635).
- If this is the case, remove the holding device (657) and the self-tapping screws (658).
- Observe the segment order.
   \* = A-A, B-B, C-C, D-D
- Secure upper half of the stator (601.0).
   Fix the upper adjusting segments
  - (635) on the segment retainer (671).



Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

- Mount self-tapping screws (658) and holding device (657).
- Tighten the screws until the adjusting segments (635) interlock with the guide of the segment retainer (671) (detail x).

#### 9.1.2.3 Smart Stator setting

#### NOTICE

#### Stator is leaky!

Damage to property can occur.

> A gap between the stator halves is not allowed.

#### Alignment of the adjusting segments (635)

- Align the gap (S2) of the lower adjusting segments (635.u) to the gap (S1) of the upper adjusting segments (635.o).
- Tighten screws of the adjusting segments (635.u) evenly using the hexagon nuts (639) in 180° / 90° steps.
- Observe the order.





#### Adjusting segment basic setting

)	Tool (W30/feeler gauge).
	5-6LS, 10-6LS => 3 mm
Ø	17-6LS - 130-6LS => 4 mm

Tighten screws of the adjusting segments (635) evenly using the hexagon nuts (639) in 180°/90° steps.

> Observe the order.

- 1-1', 2-2', 3-3', 4-4'
- Use tool (W30) for setting the gap (S) at the setting nuts (639).
- Tighten the screws of the adjusting segments (635) until there is resistance from the tool (W30).





Ausgabe	D / 04 02 2013	Dokument	OM SCT 02e	Blatt
issue	D / 04.02.2010	document	011.001.020	sheet

#### Fine adjustment of the pump parameters:



Fine adjustments for the pump parameters can be made by evenly adjusting the nuts at the adjusting segments (635).

- +10° = increases clamping.
- -10° = reduces clamping.
- Observe the order.
  1-1', 2-2', 3-3', 4-4'



#### NOTICE

Motor overload

Damage to property can occur.

> Do not exceed motor's maximum power consumption.

Ausgabe	D / 01 02 2013	Dokument		Blatt
issue	D/04.02.2013	document	011.0001.020	sheet

# 9.1.3 Pump - dismantling - SCT



#### 9.1.3.1 Preparing the pump for dismantling

	Dangerous voltage. Death or serious injury can occur.
	<ul> <li>Note safety regulations.</li> <li>Disconnect pump from all sources of energy.</li> </ul>
	Secure electrical connections against restarting.

- > Allow pipelines to cool.
- See chapter 6 of the operating and assembly instructions for instructions regarding decommissioning.



No space needs to be left for stator removal when dismantling/reassembling the stator and rotor.

### 9.1.3.2 Stator (601) - Dismantling



Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

- The holding device for the dry running protection (TSE) can get in the way when dismantling the adjusting segments (635).
- If this is the case, remove the holding device (657) and the self-tapping screws (658).
- Remove upper adjusting segments (635.0).
  - Conveying product can escape.



Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

 Mount self-tapping screws (658) and holding device (657).





# **Dismantling/reassembly**



Remove lower half of the stator (601.u) smoothly. - Conveying product can escape.

Remove upper half of the stator (601.0). Conveying product can escape.

Dismantle adjusting segments (635.u).

prevent them from falling down.

#### 9.1.3.3 Pressure branch (700) - Dismantling

\_

- > Prop up the rotor (600) with lining plate (S).
- Dismantle the pressure branch (700).



#### Segment retainer (671) - dismantling - pressure branch

- Dismantle the segment retainer (671) on the pressure branch (700).
- Remove the O-ring (731) from the centring recess on the pressure branch (700).

#### 9.1.3.4 Suction casing (500) - Dismantling

- ➤ Fit rotor (600) with protective cover (SH).
- Prop up the rotor (600) with lining plate (S).
- > For shaft seals with cartridge units, see chapter 9.4 of the operating and assembly instructions for instructions on how to dismantle the shaft seal.
- $\succ$  Remove the suction casing (500).







Ausgabe issue	D/04.02.2013	Dokument document	OM.SCT.02e	Blatt sheet
		Page 45		

500

500

623 622

672

731

#### 9.1.3.5 Segment retainer (671) - dismantling - pressure branch

- Dismantle the segment retainer (671) on the suction casing (500).
- Remove the O-ring (731) from the centring recess on the suction casing (ZA, 500).

#### 9.1.3.6 Rotating unit (RTE) - Dismantling

#### with flush connection



- Remove the flushing connection (SSÜ) on the casing of the shaft seal (SEA).
- ➤ Lift/slide splash ring (310) and turn out plug-in shaft pin (309).
- > Pull the rotating unit (RTE) with shaft seal (SEA) off from the output shaft of the drive (ANT).
- Dismantle shaft seal (SEA).
  - Note dismantling the shaft seal (chapter 9.\_).



#### without flush connection



Tool (W10/dismantling tool)

- Lift/slide splash ring (310) and turn out plug-in shaft pin (309).
- > Pull the rotating unit (RTE) with shaft seal (SEA) off from the output shaft of the drive (ANT).
- Dismantle shaft seal (SEA).
  - Note dismantling the shaft seal \_ (chapter 9.\_).



#### 9.1.3.7 Rotor (600), coupling rod (400), plug-in shaft (307) - Dismantling

Joint (G) dismantling note rotating unit - individual parts (chapter 9.2).

#### 9.1.3.8 Lantern (200)/drive (ANT) - Dismantling

- Disconnect the drive (ANT) from the lantern (200).
- Remove the lantern (200) from the base plate (GPU).





# 9.1.4 Pump - reassembly (SCT)

	WARNING	
Risk of Death or	<b>pump tipping or falling.</b> r serious injury can occur.	
<ul> <li>Faster</li> <li>pump</li> </ul>	n the lantern (200) to secure the	200
	CAUTION	
Risk of Minor inj	fingers being trapped. juries can occur.	
Do no	t reach in between connections.	

#### 9.1.4.1 Base plate (GPU), lantern (200), drive unit (ANT) - reassembly

- Assemble the lantern (200) on the base plate (GPU).
- Clean the flange bearing surfaces (FLS), bolt circle (ZD) and output shaft of the drive (ANT).



#### 9.1.4.2 Rotor (600), coupling rod (400), plug-in shaft (307) - Reassembly

Joint (G) reassembly note rotating unit - individual parts (chapter 9.2).



#### 9.1.4.3 Rotating unit (RTE) - Reassembly

- Push on the shaft seal (SEA).
  - Note shaft seal reassembly. See chapter 9.4 of the operating and assembly instructions.
- Coat the splash ring (310)/plug-in shaft (307) with pin joint grease.
- > Push the splash ring (310) onto the plug-in shaft (307).
  - Observe the fitting position of the splash ring (splash ring marking).
- > Apply antiseize graphite petroleum to the drive unit's (ANT) drive shaft. Push on the rotating unit (RTE).
- Push in the plug-in shaft pin (309).
- Install the splash ring collar at a distance of 0.5 mm from the lantern (200).

#### with flush connection

Mount the flush connection.





#### 9.1.4.4 Segment retainer (671), suction casing (500) - pre-assembly

- Remove contaminants such as paint and corrosion from all seal faces/centring recesses (ZA).
- Coat O-ring (731) with soft soap.
- > Insert the O-ring (731) into the centring recess on the suction casing (ZA, 500).
- > Assemble the segment retainer (671) on the suction casing (500) and align it using a spirit level (W).

#### 9.1.4.5 Suction casing (500) - Reassembly

- Provide rotor (600) with protective cover (SH).
- $\succ$  Prop up rotor (600) with support (S).
- Slide on casing gasket (501).
- Mount pre-assembled suction casing (500) and adjust (using spirit level).







Ausgabe		Dokument	OM SCT 020	Blatt
issue	D/04.02.2013	document	011.0001.020	sheet

### 9.1.4.6 Segment retainer (671), pressure branch (700) - pre-assembly

- Remove contaminants such as paint and corrosion from all seal faces/centring recesses (ZA).
- Coat O-ring (731) with soft soap.
- > Insert the O-ring (731) into the centring recess on the suction casing (ZA, 500).
- > Assemble the segment receiver (671) on the pressure branch (700) and align it using a spirit level.

#### 9.1.4.7 Pressure branch (700) – Reassembly

- Observe the segment order. - \* = A-A, B-B, C-C, D-D
- $\succ$  Prop up the rotor with lining plate (S).
- Align the pressure branch (700)/lantern (200) axially and radially on the base plate (GPU).
  - If necessary, undo the connection to \_ the base plate (GP).
  - Use at least 2 adjusting segments (635) opposite each other for the alignment. To secure, gently tighten the hexagon nuts (639).
- > Assemble the pressure branch (700)/lantern (200) on the base plate (GPU).
- Remove adjusting segments (635).

#### 9.1.4.8 Stator (601) – Reassembly

- For easier assembly, moisten sealing surfaces, geometry of the stator halves and rotor with soft soap.
  - Do not moisten the outer surfaces of the stator with soft soap.

#### NOTICE

#### Coating the stator outer surfaces

Damage to property can occur

- Remove any coating on the stator outer surfaces.
- Coat only the stator internal surfaces.





Page 49









601.u

Tool (W29/lifting equipment incl. lashing strap)

601.u

671

600 W29

671

601.u

671

671

601.u

- > Secure rotor (600).
  - Use tool (W29).
- Attach the lower half of the stator (601.u).
- > Press the stator half (601.u) onto the tapered surfaces of the segment receiver (671) and align it.
- Avoid damage to the stator surfaces.
- The tapered stator surface (601.u) is in contact with the segment retainer (671) tapered surface.
- Observe the segment order. \* = A-A, B-B, C-C, D-D
- Secure the lower half of the s
  - Fix the lower adjusting se \_ (635) to the segment reta
- Tighten the screws until the a ments (635) interlock with the segment retainer (671) (detai

Tool (W29/lifting

Remove the tool (W29).



tator (601.u). egments ainer (671).	671 601 671 635.u 636
djusting seg- guide of the I x).	671 635
equipment inc	I. lashing strap)

Ausgabe		Dokument		Blatt
issue	D/04.02.2013	document	011.301.020	sheet

Page 50



- > Attach the upper half of the stator (601.o).
- Align the long side of the upper half of the stator (601.0) to the lower half of the stator (601.u).

Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

- The holding device for the dry running protection (TSE) can get in the way when dismantling the adjusting segments (635).
- If this is the case, remove the holding device (657) and the self-tapping screws (658).
- Observe the segment order.
   \* = A-A, B-B, C-C, D-D
- Secure upper half of the stator (601.0).
   Fix the upper adjusting segments
  - (635) on the segment retainer (671).



Pump with dry-running protection option (TSE)

- Mount self-tapping screws (658) and holding device (657).
- Tighten the screws until the adjusting segments (635) interlock with the guide of the segment retainer (671) (detail x).

#### 9.1.4.9 Smart Stator setting

#### NOTICE

#### Stator is leaky!

Damage to property can occur.

> A gap between the stator halves is not allowed.

#### Alignment of the adjusting segments (635)

- Align the gap (S2) of the lower adjusting segments (635.u) to the gap (S1) of the upper adjusting segments (635.o).
- Tighten screws of the adjusting segments (635.u) evenly using the hexagon nuts (639) in 180° / 90° steps.
- Observe the order.





#### Adjusting segment basic setting

Tool (W30/feeler gauge). 5-6LS, 10-6LS => 3 mm 17-6LS - 130-6LS => 4 mm

Tighten screws of the adjusting segments (635) evenly using the hexagon nuts (639) in 180°/90° steps.

> Observe the order.

- 1-1', 2-2', 3-3', 4-4'
- Use tool (W30) for setting the gap (S) at the setting nuts (639).
- Tighten the screws of the adjusting segments (635) until there is resistance from the tool (W30).





Ausgabe	D / 04 02 2013	Dokument	OM SCT 020	Blatt
issue	D / 04.02.2010	document	011.001.020	sheet

#### Fine adjustment of the pump parameters:



Fine adjustments for the pump parameters can be made by evenly adjusting the nuts at the adjusting segments (635).

- +10° = increases clamping.
- -10° = reduces clamping.
- Observe the order.
  1-1', 2-2', 3-3', 4-4'



#### NOTICE

Motor overload

Damage to property can occur.

> Do not exceed motor's maximum power consumption.

Ausgabe	D / 01 02 2013	Dokument	OM SCT 020	Blatt
issue	D/04.02.2013	document	011.001.020	sheet





# 1. Functioning of the dry-running protection device (TSE)

Figure similar

ltem	Designation	ltem	Designation
SGR	Control device	653	Thermistor sensor
601	Stator	ANT	Drive
650	Connection head		

- The temperature in the stator (601) is continuously compared with the set shut-off temperature at the TSE control device (SGR).
- The temperature in the stator (601) is measured using a thermistor sensor (653) in the connection head (650).
- Two relays switch in parallel within the TSE control device (SGR) on reaching the shut-off temperature.
  - An error message is triggered and the drive **(ANT)** of the pump can be shut off using potential-free change-over contacts.
- Automatic restart of the pump is prevented by a necessary acknowledgement of the error message.



# 2. Technical data of the dry-running protection device (TSE)



# 2.1. Structural design connection head (650)

Figure similar

ltem	Designation	ltem	Designation
650	Connection head	654	Clamping screw
651	O-ring	655	Rubber ring
652	Screw socket	656	Sensor sleeve
653	Thermistor sensor		

#### Thermistor sensor

- The temperature is measured at the stator through an NTC resistor (thermistor sensor) with a protective sleeve.
  - Permissible temperature range: 0-150 °C
  - Standard resistor: 10 k $\Omega$  at 25 °C
- For more thermistor sensor resistance values ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 9.).



# 2.2. TSE control device

.

Install TSE control device (SGR) on the basis of the IP protection in a suitable casing (e.g., switch cabinet).

Install TSE control device (SGR) on DIN rail or with screw connection on mounting plate in the switch cabinet.



Types:	<ul> <li>SGRTSE 230 V ACB</li> <li>SGRTSE 115 V ACB</li> <li>SGRTSE 24 V ACB</li> <li>SGRTSE 24 V DCB</li> </ul>
Relay output:	2 potential-free changeover contacts (K1, K2), switching capacity 500 VA at 110-230 V resistive load
Input:	NTC thermistor sensor 10 k $\Omega$ at 25 °C, with sensor breakage guard at -25 °C
Temperature range:	0 to 150 °C
Power consumption:	maximum 4 VA
Sensor circuit:	<ul> <li>Open-circuit voltage maximum 2.5 V DC</li> <li>Short-circuit current maximum 0.5 mA DC</li> </ul>
Display at the device:	<ul><li>Malfunction (dry running)</li><li>Shut-off temperature</li></ul>
Operation at the device:	<ul><li>Setup shut-off temperature</li><li>Reset alert</li></ul>
Protection:	<ul><li>Casing IP 40</li><li>Terminals IP 20</li></ul>
Ambient temperature:	0 to 50 ° C



# 3. Connect TSE control device

# **DANGER**



#### Risk of fatal injury from electrical current.

There is an immediate danger of fatal electric shock as a result of contact with live parts.

- Observe safety regulations.
- Disconnect the control device from all energy sources before working on terminals.
- > Prevent electrical connections from being switched on again.
- Ensure that residual voltage is not present at any electrical connections of the pump.

### 3.1. Check line voltage

- Check the line voltage/nominal voltage according to type plate of the control device before connecting and commissioning.
  - Permissible mains voltage variations of the nominal device voltage +/- 10 %.

# NOTICE

#### Mains power failure.

Malfunction and/or irreparable damage to the pump.

- > Install the thermistor sensor leads shielded.
- Ground the shield on one side.

### 3.2. Terminal connections

1, 3	Operating voltage	
11, 13	Operating hours counter of potential- free contact	
12, 13	Button (NO) - external fault reset	
14, 15	Thermistor sensor	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
5, 6, 7	Relay output K1 (malfunction message)	
8, 9, 10	Relay output K2 (malfunction message)	P stator temp. A °C reset °F F 7 5 6 10 8 9



# 3.3. Connecting button (NO) (optional)

- Connect button (NO) to terminal 12 and 13 of the TSE control device (SGR).
- After dry running, release TSE control device (SGR) with button (NO)
  - See chapter Operation of the dry-running protection device ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 5.).



### 3.4. Use relay function

Actual temperature > shut-off temperature	Malfunction (dry-running)
Contact 6, 5 and 9, 8	closed
Contact 6, 7 and 9, 10	open

- Relays K1 and K2 are in parallel and they work together.
  - K1: Switch-off condition integrated in motor contactor control.
  - K2: optional connection to the fault sensor or process computer (reserve).

#### 3.5. Connect thermistor sensor

Connect the connection cable of thermistor sensor of the connection head (650) to terminals 14 and 15 of the TSE control device (SGR).



Similar illustration

### 3.6. Connect operating voltage

- Connect operating voltage to terminals 1 and 3 of the TSE control device (SGR).
  - See technical data of TSE control device (SGR) ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 2.2. ).
  - Note the regulations of the local power supply company and country-specific regulations.





#### 4. Commissioning the dry-running protection device (TSE)

# NOTICE

Conveying product temperature different from technical pump data ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 3). Malfunction and/or irreparable damage to the pump can occur.

Consult with SEEPEX.  $\geq$ 

#### 4.1. Note the fitting position of the dry-running protection device (TSE)

The dry-running protection device (TSE) is always installed on the suction side during delivery.

**ADANGER** Installation of the dry-running protection device (TSE) on the pressure side.

- Note the fitting position of the dry-running protection device (TSE).
  - The drilling for the dry-running protection device (TSE) in the stator (601) should always be on the suction side.



counter clockwise rotating pump



clockwise rotating pump Figures similar

#### Check the functionality

- Switch on TSE control device.  $\geq$ 
  - Digital display lights up.
- TSE control device starts self-test.  $\geq$ 
  - Currently set shut-off temperature is displayed. \_



- Keep (stator temp.) button pressed.
- $\triangleright$ Read temperature value.
  - Functionality is present if the display is in accordance with the existing temperature.
  - In the case of any discrepancies and functional failures, see chapter Malfunctions, Causes and Rectification ( $\rightarrow$  Chapter 8).











#### Set the switch-off temperature

#### Determining stator operating temperature

- Shut-off temperature is set at 50 °C when delivered.
- During commissioning, maintain shut-off temperature of 50 °C.
- Commission the pump for 30 to 60 minutes to stabilise the stator operating temperature.

temp.	
-------	--

- > Hold (stator temp.) button with the pump running.
  - Read operating temperature to set the final shut-off temperature.
- > Set shut-off temperature at the TSE control device.
  - Set shut-off temperature 10 °C higher than the displayed or maximum operating temperature during operation.



#### Fine adjustments

i		<ul> <li>Confirm modification of the corrected shut-off tem seconds with button (P), otherwise TSE control of saving the corrected shut-off temperature.</li> </ul>	nperature within 10 levice will change without
Р	>	<ul> <li>Press button (P) briefly.</li> <li>Setup mode is displayed.</li> <li>The display shows alternating "SET" and the category</li> </ul>	SEE
		temperature set last.	40
		<ul> <li>Increase shut-off temperature.</li> <li>Value changes initially by +1 °C at a time, after approx. 3 s in +10 °C steps.</li> </ul>	4
reşet	•	<ul> <li>Reduce shut-off temperature.</li> <li>Value changes initially by -1 °C at a time, after approx. 3 s in -10 °C steps.</li> </ul>	29
Р		<ul> <li>Press button (P) briefly.</li> <li>Operating mode is displayed.</li> <li>Adjusted shut-off temperature is transmitted to the permanent memory and shown on the display.</li> </ul>	SEF



#### Change the temperature unit

• Changing the temperature unit from °C (degree Celsius) to °F (Fahrenheit):



- To change the temperature unit from °C to °F, press ( ) button for 10 s.
- > Yellow LED next to the symbol °C or °F lights up.



# 5. Operation of the dry-running protection device (TSE)

# 5.1. Call operating hour counter

<ul> <li>The TSE control device in</li> <li>Activate operating hour co</li> <li>Bridge terminal 11 and</li> <li>The operating hours can be service level is possible of</li> </ul>	ncludes an operating hour counter. ounter. d 13. be called on the service level. The access to the nly after a code number has been entered.
<ul> <li>Press (P) button for approx. 5 s, until dis</li> <li>The display shows alternating "Cod</li> </ul>	splay "CodE" appears. E" and "100".
➤ Using the arrow keys (▼/▲) set code "S	<sup>33".</sup>
<ul> <li>Press button (P) briefly.</li> <li>Code will be acknowledged.</li> <li>Access into the service level.</li> </ul>	
Display alternating: "- Hi-" and "value" • N	No function
<ul> <li>Press button (P) briefly.</li> <li>Change to next parameter/display v</li> </ul>	value.
Display alternating: "bh.Hi" and "value" • 0	Dperating hour counter displayed value x 10000)
<ul> <li>Press button (P) briefly.</li> <li>Change to next parameter/display v</li> </ul>	

SEEPEX. All things flow

Display alternating:

- "bh.Lo" and "value"
- Operating hour counter (displayed value x 1)

Ρ

Press button (P) briefly.Change to the operating mode.

# 5.2. Release TSE control device after dry running

- The installed relays switch off and remain locked in this position if the set shut-off temperature at the TSE control device is exceeded.
  - Red LED lights up and signals an alert.





reset

- Acknowledge alert/release relay:
  - Press button on the TSE control device or external button (closer) on terminal 12 and 13 for at least 1 s, in order to release TSE control device.
- Shut-off operating voltage at the TSE control device (terminal 1 and 3).
  - Press external contact (button, closed for at least 1 s).

# 6. Functional failure

 $\geq$ 

**NOTICE** Thermistor sensor or wire break. Short-circuit in the thermistor sensor or in the line. Overshooting or undershooting of the measuring range (-25-150 °C). Alert **(Err I)** is displayed and drive of the pump shuts off.

Inspection of the TSE control device and sensor circuit including thermistor sensor.

# 6.1. Thermistor sensor performance check

Remove thermistor sensor supply line from the connection head (650).









Connect resistor measuring unit (MTT) to connection head (650).



Figure similar

> Determine electrical resistance and compare with temperature of the pump:

Ttemperature °C	0	10	20	25	30	40	50	60
Resistor $\Omega$	32650	19900	12490	10000	8057	5327	3603	2488
			i.	i.		i.		
Ttemperature °C	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140
Resistor $\Omega$	1752	1255	950	678	510	389	301	235

- For more thermistor sensor resistance values ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 9.).
- In the case of discrepancies in the resistor value > 10 % of the set value, there is a defect in the thermistor sensor.
  - Replace thermistor sensor (  $\rightarrow\,$  chapter 7. /8. , Dismantling/Assembly of Dryrunning protection device).
- In the case of correct values, there is a defect in the thermistor sensor supply line or the connection terminals.
  - Check connections.

# 6.2. Performance check TSE control device

Disconnect thermistor sensor supply line from terminals 14 and 15 of the TSE control device (SGR).



Figure similar

Connect commercially available carbon film or metal film resistor (R) in accordance with the following values to terminals 14 and 15 of the TSE control device (SGR):





Resistor $\Omega$	10000	5600	2200	1000	560	220
Switching temperature °C	25	39	63	87	107	143

Switch on TSE control device.

- Digital display lights up.

-	stator	J	1
	temp.		
_		2	

Keep (stator temp.) button pressed and read temperature value.

Read value must correspond with the switching temperature allocated to the resistor used.

In the case of a display deviation of more than 5-10 °C or in the case of no display, replace TSE control device.

# 7. Dismantle pump-sided parts of dry-running protection device (TSE)

> Follow the instructions in the chapter Shut-down ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 6).

# NOTICE

#### Adjusting the sensor sleeve (656) assembled at the factory.

Damage caused by incorrect readings of the dry-running protection device (TSE).

- > Retain the location and position of the sensor sleeve (656).
- The pump-side parts of the dry-running protection device (TSE) should be assembled / dismantled only by SEEPEX trained personnel.

# 7.1. Dismantle connection head (650) and thermistor sensor (653)

- Loosen screw (SCH) on the cover of the connection head (650).
- > Open the cover of the connection head (650).





Loosen connection wires of the thermistor sensor (653) on the terminal board of the connection head (650).

 Loosen fixing screw (FS) on the connection head (650).





Remove connection head (650) from screw socket (652).



Dismantle screw socket (652) together with two O-rings (651) from stator (601).





> Remove clamping screw (654).

Remove thermistor sensor (653) together with rubber ring (655) from sensor sleeve (656).





# 8. Assemble pump-sided parts of dry-running protection device (TSE)

# NOTICE

Adjusting the sensor sleeve (656) assembled at the factory.

Damage caused by incorrect readings of the dry-running protection device (TSE).

- > Retain the location and position of the sensor sleeve (656).
- The pump-side parts of the dry-running protection device (TSE) should be assembled / dismantled only by SEEPEX trained personnel.
- Remove the transport locks (STP) (if available) from sensor sleeve (656).





Mount the clamping screw (654) and rubber ring (655) onto the sensor sleeve (656) and tighten slightly.

Insert the thermistor sensor (653) through the opening of the clamping screw (654) down to the bottom of the sensor sleeve (656).





Tighten the thermistor sensor "finger tight" (653) using clamping screw (654) and rubber ring (655).



Assemble screw socket (652) together with two O-rings (651) on stator (601).





- Install connection head (650) on screw socket (652).
  - Route connection wires of the thermistor sensor (653) from below through the opening in the terminal board.

Fix connection head (650) with fixing screw (FS) on screw socket (652).





- Secure connection wires of the thermistor sensor (653) on the terminal board of the connection head (650).
  - Note the sectional drawing of the TSE connection head ( $\rightarrow$  chapter 2.1 ).



- > Close the cover of the connection head (650).
- Tighten screw (SCH) on the cover of the connection head (650).





# 9. Thermistor sensor resistor values

**NTC thermistor sensor with stainless steel protective sleeve:** Standard resistor: 10 k $\Omega$  at 25 °C

Temperature °C	Resistor $\Omega$	Temperature °C	Resistor $\Omega$
-20	97080	16	15000
-19	91610	17	14320
-18	86490	18	13680
-17	81690	19	13070
-16	77180	20	12490
-15	72950	21	11940
-14	68980	22	11420
-13	65240	23	10920
-12	61730	24	10450
-11	58430	25	10000
-10	55330	26	9573
-9	52400	27	9167
-8	49650	28	8777
-7	47060	29	8407
-6	44620	30	8057
-5	42330	31	7723
-4	40160	32	7403
-3	38110	33	7097
-2	36190	34	6807
-1	34370	35	6530
0	32650	36	6267
1	31030	37	6017
2	29500	38	5777
3	28050	39	5547
4	26690	40	5327
5	25390	41	5117
6	24170	42	4917
7	23010	43	4727
8	21920	44	4543
9	20880	45	4370
10	19900	46	4200
11	18970	47	4040
12	18090	48	3890
13	17250	49	3743
14	16460	50	3603
15	15710	51	3467
52	3340	91	887.7
53	3217	92	861



Temperature °C	Resistor $\Omega$	Temperature °C	Resistor $\Omega$
54	3099	93	835.3
55	2986	94	810.3
56	2878	95	786.7
57	2774	96	763.3
58	2675	97	741
59	2579	98	719.3
60	2488	99	698.7
61	2400	100	678.3
62	2316	101	659
63	2235	102	640
64	2157	103	622
65	2083	104	604
66	2011	105	587
67	1942	106	571
68	1876	107	555
69	1813	108	539.7
70	1752	109	525
71	1693	110	510.3
72	1636	111	496.7
73	1582	112	483
74	1530	113	470
75	1479	114	457.3
76	1431	115	445
77	1384	116	433.3
78	1340	117	421.7
79	1297	118	410.7
80	1255	119	400
81	1215	120	389.3
82	1177	121	379.3
83	1140	122	369.7
84	1104	123	360
85	1070	124	350.6
86	1036	125	341.7
87	1004	126	333.1
88	973.7	127	324.7
89	944	128	316.5
90	915.3	129	308.6
130	300.93	141	229.70
131	293.47	142	224.30
132	286.32	143	219.00
133	279.17	144	213.90
134	272.03	145	208.87

Document ZU.TSE.STD.01EN



Temperature °C	Resistor $\Omega$	Temperature °C	Resistor $\Omega$
135	265.7	146	204.03
136	259.3	147	199.33
137	253	148	194.77
138	246.93	149	190.33
139	241.03	150	185.97
140	235.27		
### Single acting mechanical seal

### 1 Safety

N N		WARNING
¥2	<ul> <li>Shaft seal is</li> <li>Leakage may</li> <li>Take safet</li> <li>Wear suita</li> <li>Dispose of</li> <li>Note appli</li> </ul>	a <b>leaky.</b> y escape into the atmosphere. y measures to protect persons and the environment. able protective clothing. f leakage appropriately. cable regulations when handling hazardous substances.

### 2 Operating conditions and and material combination

- Adjust to the relevant application
  - Refer to technical data (chapter 3).

### 3 Design

· Single acting mechanical seal



### 4 Commissioning

### NOTICE

### Dry running of the mechanical seal.

Damage to property may result.

> The mechanical seal must be laid in liquid medium before being commissioned.

### Circulation, flushing and/or flushing pipe

- Additional flushing or circulation pipes are not required where shaft sealing lies in medium.
- Flushing pipes may be possible under special circumstances and after speaking to seepex.

### NOTICE

### Shaft seal is not leakage free.

Damage to property through leakage.

Components which come into contact with leakage must be corrosion-resistant or otherwise suitably protected.

### Adjust shaft seal

- It is absolutely vital to adjust at the application site in a manner appropriate for the operating conditions.
- > Refer to the sectional drawing of the shaft seal for setting measurements.
- > Set the setting measurements of the shaft seal to the plug-in shaft (307).

Ausgabe issue	B / 29.06.2009	Dokument document	OM.SEA.02e	Blatt sheet	
		Page 72			

### 5 Monitoring during operation



### 6 Dismantling of the mechanical seal

Refer to data sheet (chapter 3.1) and sectional drawing of the shaft seal (chapter 9.\_) for design.

### With axial locking device

- Clean plug-in shaft (307), remove edges/ burrs.
- Moisten plug-in shaft (307) with lubricant (thinned liquid soap).
- Pull mechanical seal casing (333) from the plug-in shaft (307).
- Loosen the axial locking device of the mechanical seal (330/372); pull mechanical seal (330) from the plug-in shaft (307).
- Push counter ring of the mechanical seal (330G) with seal out of the mechanical seal casing (333).





### Without axial locking device

- Clean plug-in shaft (307), remove edges/ burrs.
- Moisten plug-in shaft (307) with lubricant (thinned liquid soap).
- Pull mechanical seal casing (333) from the plug-in shaft (307).
- Pull the mechanical seal (330) from the plug-in shaft (307).
- Push counter ring of the mechanical seal (330G) with seal out of the mechanical seal casing (333).





### 7 Reassembly of mechanical seal



Shaft sealings are high-quality precision parts.

Their installation is therefore to be undertaken with care.

Careful handling and the utmost of cleanliness are prerequisites.

> Assembly aids such as oil/grease are not permitted.

### With axial locking device

- > Clean the mechanical seal casing (333).
- Moisten the seal with lubricant (thinned liquid soap).
- Attach the counter ring and seal using even pressure into the mechanical seal casing (333).
- Clean the plug-in shaft (307), remove edges/burrs.
- Adjust the set collar (372) in accordance with sectional drawing of shaft seal (chapter 9.\_).
- Stick the set screw in and determine.
   Use "medium-strength" adhesive.
- Moisten plug-in shaft (307) and elastomer parts of the mechanical seal (330) with lubricant (thinned liquid soap).
- Slide mechanical seal (330) onto the plugin shaft (307) until the installation edge has been reached.

### Without axial locking device

- $\succ$  Clean the mechanical seal casing (333).
- Moisten the seal with lubricant (thinned liquid soap).
- Attach the counter ring and seal using even pressure into the mechanical seal casing (333).
- Clean the plug-in shaft (307), remove edges/burrs.
- > Adjust mechanical seal (330).

 Note sectional drawing of shaft seal (chapter 9.\_).

- Moisten plug-in shaft (307) and elastomer parts of the mechanical seal (330) with lubricant (thinned liquid soap).
- Slide mechanical seal (330) onto the plugin shaft (307) until the installation edge has been reached.









# **OPERATING MANUAL**

SEEPEX MECHANICAL SEAL

Type GA-60

These instructions are intended for assembly, operating and control personnel and should be kept on site.

PLEASE READ this manual carefully and OBSERVE the information contained as to:

SafetyTransport / StorageInstallationOperation

Information about the product Servicing

If there are any unclear points, please contact SEEPEX!



Dago	2
гауе	2

Table of Contents	
Keywords and symbols	
GENERAL SAFETY NOTES	4
Instructions for worker's protection	5
TRANSPORT / STORAGE	6
Transport Packing and storage	
INFORMATION ABOUT THE PRODUCT	9
Type designation Designation use Operating limits Materials Description and function Supply of M.S Emissions INSTALLATION Assembly utilities Preparation for assembly	
Assembly / Installation	
OPERATION	
Instructions for safe operation Instructions for start-up	15 
SERVICING	
Maintenance Directives in case of failure Disassembly / Removal Disposal of the SEEPEX mechanical seal Required details for inquires and orders	
· ·	



# **Keywords and Symbols**

The following symbols are used for particularly important information:

$\triangle$	"Attention, please pay special attention to these sections of text".
DANGER!	Draws attention to a direct hazard that will lead to injury or death of persons.
WARNING!	Draws attention to the risk that a hazard could lead to serious injury or death of persons.
CAUTION!	Draws attention to a hazard or unsafe method of working that could lead to personal injury or damage to equipment.
ATTENTION!	Identifies a potentially dangerous situation. If it is not avoided, the product or something in its vicinity could be damaged.
IMPORTANT!	Identifies tips for use and other particularly useful information.



# **GENERAL SAFETY NOTES**

# $\wedge$

Any person being involved in assembly, disassembly, start up, operation and maintenance of the SEEPEX Mechanical Seal must read and understand this instruction manual and in particular the safety notes.

SEEPEX Mechanical Seals are manufactured on a high quality level, and they keep a high working reliability. Yet, if they are not operated within their intended purpose or handled inexpertly by untrained personnel, they may cause risks.

The pump has to be set up in such a way that seal leakage can be led off and disposed of properly and that any personal injury caused by spurting product in the event of a seal failure is avoided.

Any operation mode that affects the operational safety of the mechanical seal is not permitted.

Unauthorized modifications or alterations are not permitted as they affect the operational safety of the mechanical seal.

SEEPEX mechanical seals must be installed, operated, maintained, removed or repaired by authorized, trained and instructed personnel only.

The responsibilities for the respective jobs to be done have to be determined clearly and observed in order to prevent unclear competencies from the point of security.

Any work to be done on the mechanical seal is generally only permitted when the seal is neither operating nor pressurized.

### WARNING!

Seals that have been used with hazardous substances must be properly cleaned so that there is no possible danger to people or to the environment.

Apart from the notes given in this manual, the general regulations for worker's protection and those for prevention of accidents have to be observed.



## **Instructions for worker's protection**



# WARNING!

If the medium to be sealed and/or the supply liquid is subject to the Hazardous Substances Regulation (GefStoffV), the instructions for handling dangerous substances (safety data sheets to EU Directive 91/155/EEC) and the accident prevention regulations have be observed.

Medium to be sealed and/or supply medium may escape if the seal fails. Injury of persons and environment may be prevented by the user providing for splash protection and wearing safety goggles. Care has to be taken by the user for proper disposal of the leakage. The user has to control these measures.

The user has to check what effects a failure of the mechanical seal might have and what safety measures have to be taken to prevent personal injury or damage to the environment.



### **TRANSPORT / STORAGE**

### Transport

If not specified differently, the SEEPEX standard packing is used which is suitable for dry transport by truck, train or plane. The warning signs and notes on the packing must be observed.

In addition, seaworthy packing may become necessary.

Notes for incoming inspection:

- Check packaging for visible damages.
- Open packaging carefully. Do not damage or lose parts supplied separately.
- Check if consignment is complete (delivery note). Inform the supplier. immediately in writing if parts are damaged or missing.

The mechanical seal has to be protected from damage during transport and storage. The transport case in which the seal is supplied is well suited for this purpose and should be kept for a possible return transport.

### ATTENTION!

If the machine as well as the mechanical seal installed into the machine are transported together, the shaft has to be protected from deflection and shocks.

### Packing and storage

The following recommendations apply to all SEEPEX mechanical seals which have been supplied and stored in their undamaged original packaging, as well as to seals which have been installed in the pump but have not yet been put into operation.

SEEPEX mechanical seals and spare parts are super finished and repeatedly tested machine elements. For storage, special conditions have to be followed.

Sliding materials and elastomers are subject to material-specific and time-based alterations (distortion, aging) which might reduce the full efficiency of the mechanical seals. Yet, this may be avoided by observing the storage instructions.

For the stock keeping of elastomers, special conditions are required. For all rubberelastic parts, the rules of DIN 7716 resp. of ISO 2230-1973 (E) are valid.



The best suited environment for storing mechanical seals is characterized as follows:

• dust free.

- moderately ventilated.
- constantly tempered.

o relative air humidity below 65 %.
o temperature between 15 °C and 25 °C.

Protect the seal from:

- direct exposure to heat (sun, heating).
- ultraviolet light (halogen or fluorescent lamps, sunlight, arc welding).

• presence or development of ozone (arc welding, mercury vapour lamps, highvoltage devices, electric motors).

➢ risk of embrittlement of elastomeric materials.

It has to be differentiated between:

- M.S. stored in the stock room.
- M.S. installed in the machine, but not yet in operation.

# • M.S. in the stock

# **IMPORTANT!**

Store the seal in the original packing lying on a flat surface. Check the packaging periodically for damages.

Duly stored mechanical seal:

• Lasts 3 years after delivery of the mechanical seal.

# • M.S. installed into the machine

# **ATTENTION!**

A preservation of SEEPEX mechanical seals is not allowed.

In the case of preservation of complete machines with mechanical seals installed, SEEPEX must be contacted.

- Do not use corrosion protection agents.
- ▶ Risk of deposition and possibly chemical attack of the secondary seals.

Due to longer erecting times of new designed plants, the period between delivery of the mechanical seal and its installation and start up may exceed the period of 2-3 years.



If planned start-up of the plant is after 3 years of storage, a replacement seal may need to be considered.

Damages caused by improper storage may not be claimed with reference to the standard SEEPEX warranty.



## **INFORMATION ABOUT THE PRODUCT**

### Type designation

SEEPEX Mechanical Seal Type GA-60

### **Designated use**

This mechanical seal is exclusively designed for the use in the specified application. A different utilization or a utilization going beyond the specification is considered contrary to its designated use and excludes a liability by the manufacturer.

Operation under conditions lying outside those limits stated in paragraph "Operating limits" is considered contrary to its designated use.

Should the seal be operated under different conditions or at a different application, SEEPEX has to be asked for recognition as safe in advance.

Changes to operating conditions have to be documented.

### **Operating limits**

### **ATTENTION!**

Operating limits depend on the materials, the media to be sealed and the diameter of the sealing (if there are any unclear points, please contact SEEPEX).

Shaft diameter	(dw)	: 25 - 100 mm
Pressure to be sealed	(p1)	: 10 bar g
Temperature to be sealed	(t1)	: <b>-</b> 20 120° C
Max. sliding speed	(vg)	: 10 m/s

Operation under several limit values simultaneously should be avoided as higher loads (pressure, temperature, speed) can increase wear or lead to damage of sliding faces or elastomers. This could result in a shorter service life and the risk of a sudden seal failure endangering men and environment.

The selection of the mechanical seal (type, suitability, materials) should be done by SEEPEX staff or other authorized persons.

Further information about the operating conditions can be found in the SEEPEX pump data sheets.



### Materials

The materials of the mechanical seal depend on the application and are fixed in the order.

### **Description and function**

- single seal.
- unbalanced.
- bi-directional.
- rubber cup seat.
- stationary seal face.
- rotating seal face.
- elastomeric bellow.
- cylindrical single spring.
- no glued joints.
- for media containing solids (e.g. sewage applications).
- rotating, torsion-free elastomeric bellows serving as:
  - o face housing.
  - o secondary sealing element.
  - o drive collar.

### Supply of M.S.

The mechanical seal has to be constantly wetted by liquid medium. The medium to be sealed must not damage the M.S. neither chemically (e.g. corrosion, embrittlement) nor physically (e.g. erosion, abrasion).

For a safe operation of the mechanical seal, we recommend to apply at inboard the most suitable type of circulation described in API 610 / 682. This measure protects the seal cavity from deposition of solids.

To operate multiple seals, special supply systems are required. Please contact SEEPEX.



### Emissions

A mechanical seal is a dynamic seal that cannot be free of leakage due to physical and technical reasons. Seal design, manufacture tolerances, operating conditions, running quality of the machine, etc. mainly define the leakage value. In fact, compared to other sealing systems, there is few leakage.

### WARNING!

If the medium to be sealed and/or the supply liquid is subject to the Hazardous Substances Regulation (GefStoffV), the instructions for handling dangerous substances (safety data sheets to EU Directive 91/155/EEC) and the accident prevention regulations have to be observed.

A possibly increased leakage during start-up will decrease to a normal quantity after the running-in period of the sliding faces.

If this is not the case or if there are other malfunctions, the mechanical seal has to be shut down, removed and checked for reasons of safety.

The leakage can be liquid or gaseous. Its aggressiveness corresponds to that of the medium to be sealed.

Leakage of mechanical seal at outboard side has to be drained and disposed of properly.

### IMPORTANT!

Components which may get in contact with the leakage have to be corrosion-resistant or have to be adequately protected.



## INSTALLATION

### Assembly utilities

- ethyl alcohol.
- cellulose-tissue (no rag, no cloth!).
- o-ring lifter.
- water and washing up liquid.
- cardboard discs.

### **Preparation for assembly**

### **ATTENTION!**

The seal should remain packed until the following working steps have been completely terminated.

Check the parts of the pump for:



# chamfered edges (sliding cones i.e. 2 mm / 30° or in accordance with EN 12756).

- radiused transition.
- mating fits and o-ring surfaces: fine finished Rz 10 μm (= N7 = CLA 63).
- Shaft surface in the area of the mechanical seal finished according to EN 12756: Ra = 0.8 μm (= N6 = CLA 32).
- Shoulder or stop device for the bellows of the mech. seal to take up axial forces.

Check at the pump:

- Damage of connecting surfaces to the M.S.
- Mating dimensions, rectangularity and concentricity to the shaft axis.

Run-out accuracy of the shaft (acc. to DIN ISO 5199):

- Shaft diameters up to 50 mm: max. 0.05 mm.
- Shaft diameters 50 mm 100 mm: max. 0.08 mm.
- Prepare the place of assembly, take away any non-required tool, cuttings, dirty cleaning wool, etc.
- Cover the work bench with a piece of clean, non-fibrous cardboard.



### Assembly / installation

SEEPEX mechanical seals are super-finished and repeatedly tested machine elements whose handling during assembly in particular of sliding materials and elastomers requires special care during several procedures.

For installation, the assembly drawing of mechanical seal has to be observed.

# **IMPORTANT!**

The mechanical seal has to be installed under the cleanest conditions and very carefully.

- Unpack the seal and check seal face, seat and elastomer bellows for possible damages.
- Never place the seal faces or seats on their sliding faces without having covered them adequately.
- Check before starting assembly:
  - o complete availability of all components by means of the drawing.
  - o all components have to be clean and in perfect condition.

Sprinkle the elastomer bellows and the shaft with low-surface-tension water (add washing up liquid) or ethyl alcohol to decrease frictional force during assembly of the seal.

Oil or grease as assembly agent is not permitted in any case.

# **ATTENTION!**

Never force the seal during installation.

# **ATTENTION!**

Avoid unnecessary rotation of the shaft (damage of the sliding faces is possible).

# **ATTENTION!**

Avoid knocking the seal! Damage to mechanical seals has an adverse effect on their safe operation.



Possible installation order:

• Feed the degreased sealing element (rubber cup) onto the seat.

If present:

- At the seat mark the position of the rear slot beside the sliding face.
- Align the seat with the torque transmission pin.
- Cover the sliding face of the seat with a cardboard washer.
- Press the seat slowly and without interruption into its position.
  - ➢ Use plenty of water or alcohol as lubricant.
  - ➢ Use a distance sleeve, if necessary.
- Remove the cardboard washer from the sliding face.
- Check the rectangular position of the seat to the shaft axis.
- Mount the seal cover with the seat installed before.
- Clean the sliding faces thoroughly with ethyl alcohol and paper tissues (no fabric, no cloths!).
- In case of material "BUKO" (carbon graphite) wipe it until the paper tissues stay clean.
- > Do not touch the sliding faces any more with bare fingers.
- Mount the sliding faces absolutely dry, dust-free and clean. Do not use any lubricants!



- Push rotating seal unit (bellows unit) with a slow clockwise turn onto the shaft.
- Stick to the dimensions in the assembly drawing!
- ➢ If necessary use a mounting sleeve.
- > For long pushing distances add liquid several times.
- Check "L" rings, spring and seal face for correct fit.
- Mount stop device for bellows unit to take up axial forces.
- Stick to the dimensions in the assembly drawing by all means!
- Further assembly of the pump in accordance with the instructions from SEEPEX.



### **OPERATION**

### **Instructions for safe operation**

For a single mechanical seal the pressure in the seal chamber (stuffing box pressure) has to be higher than the ambient pressure at the pump at any time. Otherwise the pump will suck in air via the sliding faces, which will result in dry-running and consequent failure of the mechanical seal.

Damages due to dry-running are excluded from the warranty.

During every state of operation the mechanical seal has to be constantly wetted by the medium to be sealed in its liquid form, in particular when the pump is started or stopped.

If the medium to be pumped builds deposits or tends to solidify during cooling down or standstill of the pump the stuffing box has to be flushed with suitable clean liquid. The flow and the liquid should be determined by the user.

If the operation limit values and the instructions given in this manual are followed a trouble-free operation of the mechanical seal can be expected.

### **Instructions for start up**

### Safety checks before start up

- Torque transmission between mechanical seal and shaft duly installed.
- Supply connections tightened pressure-sealed.
- Disposal connections installed environmentally safe.

For a safe operation of the mechanical seal we recommend to apply at inboard the most suitable type of circulation described in API 610 / 682. This measure protects the seal cavity from deposition of solids.

- Flood machine and seal cavity (stuffing box) with medium and vent thoroughly.
- Now the seal is ready for operation.



# SERVICING

### Maintenance

A correctly operated mechanical seal needs low maintenance.

A duly operation includes a regular check of the following parameters:

- Temperature.
- Leakage (drainage) rate of the mechanical seal.

An inspection of the mechanical seal should be carried out during a revision of the complete plant. We recommend to have this inspection be performed by responsible SEEPEX personnel.

If the mechanical seal is removed during a revision of the plant it has to be replaced by a new one.

### **Directives in case of failure**

Try to define the kind of failure and record it.

- In the event of excessive leakage, note changes in the leakage amount and switch the pump off if necessary.
- > If a constant amount is leaking in a steady flow, the mechanical seal is damaged.
- In the event of a inadmissible temperature rise, the pump has to be stopped for safety reasons.

If there is a malfunction which you cannot correct on your own or if the cause of malfunction is not clearly recognizable, please immediately contact SEEPEX.

### **Disassembly / removal**



- Stop the pump as instructed, allow to cool, depressurize and ensure that pressure cannot build up again.
- Work on the M.S. is only permitted when the pump is at a standstill and depressurized.
- There must be no product on the M.S.  $\Rightarrow$  if necessary drain the pump and rinse it out.
- Isolate the pump to prevent it starting up unexpectedly.
- Comply with the safety notes (safety data sheets).



### **IMPORTANT!**

When removing, please observe by all means:

- current accident prevention regulations.
- regulations for handling hazardous substances.

### WARNING!

Seals that have been used with hazardous substances must be properly cleaned so that there is no possible danger to people or to the environment.

### **IMPORTANT!**

The packaging used to transport the seal must:

- be identified with the relevant hazard symbol.
- include the safety data sheet for the product and/or supply medium.

Remove the seal in the reverse sequence as described for assembly (set up).

### **Disposal of the SEEPEX mechanical seal**

Usually, the SEEPEX mechanical seals can be easily disposed of after a thorough cleaning:

- Metal parts (steels, stainless steels, non-ferrous heavy metals) divided into the different groups belong to scrap metal waste.
- Ceramic materials (synthetic carbons, ceramics, carbides) belong to waste products. They can be separated from their housing materials, as are physiologically recognized as safe.
- Synthetic materials/plastics (elastomers, PTFE) belong to special waste.

# **CAUTION!**

Material containing fluorine must not be burnt.

### **IMPORTANT!**

Some of the synthetic materials, divided into the different groups can be recycled.



# **Required details for inquiries and orders**

For inquiries and orders the following details are required:

- SEEPEX pump commission no.
- Part item no., designation, material, number of pieces with reference to the drawing if available.

**SEEPEX** Inc. 511 Speedway Drive Enon, OH 45323 USA

Phone: 1-937-864-7150 Fax: 1-937-864-7157



10.0

Manufacturer's Documents from Sub-supplier

# Intelligent Drivesystems



# **B1000** Operating & Instruction Manuals For Gear Units

100200112



# NORD DRIVESYSTEMS

# Spanning the Globe to Serve You

Since 1965, NORD Gear has grown to global proportions on the strength of product performance, superior customer service, and intelligent solutions to a never-ending variety of industrial challenges.

All mechanical and electrical components of a drive are available from NORD Gear. Our products cover the full range of drive equipment: helical in-line, helical shaft-mount, helical bevel, helical worm gearboxes, motors and AC drives from 1/6 hp to 250 hp, with torques from 90 lb-in to 900,000 lb-in.

But NORD Gear does far more than manufacture the world's finest drive components. We provide our customers with optimum drive configurations for their specific purposes, providing each and every one of them with truly complete and efficient systems at a price/quality ratio unmatched in today's fast-changing markets.

NORD Gear makes its wide range of products easily available through a global network that provides all customers with prompt delivery and expert support services to consistently exceed customer expectations. We are firmly committed to being totally responsive to the ideas and specifications of every customer, anywhere in the world.





# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**



- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

TITLE	Document Number & Hyperlink
General Instructions	<u>U10000</u>
Safety Notes	<u>U10020</u>
Storage & Commissioning	<u>U10040</u>
Unit Installation	<u>U10060</u>
Solid Shaft Connections	<u>U10250</u>
-Keyed Hollow Shaft	<u>U10270</u>
Shaft Fixing Kit	<u>U10280</u>
Hollow Shaft With Shrink Disc	<u>U10290</u>
	<u>U10310</u>
Reducer Mounting Footed & Flange Mount Gear Units	<u>U10500</u>
Clincher <sup>™</sup> Shaft-Mount With Rubber Buffers	<u>U10580</u>
Right Angle Shaft-Mount with Torque Arm (D)	<u>U10600</u>
Helical & Bevel Reducer Lubrication	<u>U10750</u>
VL2 & VL3 Extended Bearing Lubrication	<u>U10760</u>
Helical Worm Reducer Lubrication	<u>U10770</u>
-Minicase <sup>™</sup> (SM) Worm Reducer Lubrication	<u>U10790</u>
-Minicase <sup>TM</sup> (SMI/SMID) Worm Reducer Lubrication	<u>U10800</u>
-FLEXBLOC <sup>™</sup> Worm Reducer Lubrication	<u>U10810</u>
Expansion Chambers Installation & Maintenance Manual	<u>U10830</u>
Helical & Bevel Reducer Lubrication Types	<u>U11000</u>
-Conveyor Drive Lubrication Information	<u>U11001</u>
Helical Worm Reducer Lubrication Types	<u>U11020</u>
Minicase <sup>™</sup> (SM) Worm Reducer Lubrication Types	<u>U11040</u>
Minicase™ (SMI/SMID) Worm Reducer Lubrication Types	<u>U11050</u>
FLEXBLOC <sup>™</sup> Worm Reducer Lubrication Types	<u>U11060</u>
-Standard In-Line Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U11500</u>
Standard In-Line Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U11600</u>
Helical In Line Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U11700</u>
Helical In-Line Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U11800</u>
CLINCHER <sup>™</sup> Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U11900</u>
90.1 Helical-Bevel Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12000</u>
90.1 Helical-Bevel Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12100</u>
-92 Series Helical Bevel Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12200</u>
92.1/93.1 Series Helical Bevel Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12205</u>
-92 Series Helical-Bevel Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12300</u>
Helical-Worm Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12400</u>
Helical-Worm Solid Shaft/Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12500</u>
Helical-Worm Hollow Shaft Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12600</u>
Nordbloc Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12700</u>
Nordbloc Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12800</u>

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

**NORD Gear Corporation** 

Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673



# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**



- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

TITLE	Document Number & Hyperlink
Nordbloc.1 Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U12900</u>
Nordbloc.1 Flanged Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U13000</u>
Minicase <sup>™</sup> (SM) Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U13100</u>
Minicase <sup>™</sup> (SMI) Footed Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U13150</u>
Minicase <sup>™</sup> Elanged (SM) Oil Fill Quantities	<u>U13200</u>
Minicase <sup>TM</sup> Flanged (SMI) Oli Fili Quantities	<u>U13250</u>
F <del>LEXBLOC<sup>™</sup> Oil Fill Quantities</del>	<u>U13300</u>
-Standard In-Line Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14000</u>
Helical In-Line Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14100</u>
CLINCHER™ Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14200</u>
-92 Series Helical-Bevel Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14300</u>
92.1/93.1 Series Helical-Bevel Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14305</u>
90.1 Helical-Bevel Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14400</u>
-Helical-Worm Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14500</u>
Nordbloc Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14600</u>
Nordbloc.1 Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14700</u>
-Minicase <sup>™</sup> (SMI) Worm Oil Plug & Vent Locations	<u>U14750</u>
-FLEXBLOC <sup>™</sup> Vent Locations	<u>U14800</u>
Standard In-Line Parts List Drawings	<u>U15000</u>
Helical In-Line Parts List Drawings	<u>U15100</u>
CLINCHER™ Parts List Drawings	<u>U15200</u>
CLINCHER™ VL2 & VL3 Parts List Drawings	<u>U15210</u>
90.1 Helical-Bevel Parts List Drawings	<u>U15300</u>
90.1 Helical-Bevel VL2 & VL3 Parts List Drawings	<u>U15310</u>
92 Series Helical-Bevel Parts List Drawings	<u>U15400</u>
92.1/93.1 Series Helical-Bevel Parts List Drawings	<u>U15415</u>
Helical-Worm Parts List Drawings	<u>U15500</u>
Nordbloc <sup>™</sup> Parts List Drawings	<u>U15600</u>
Nordbloc.1 parts list	<u>U15705</u>
Troubleshooting	<u>U19000</u>
Motors - AC Induction, Single and Polyphase	<u>U30000</u>
-Motor Brakes Installation & Maintenance	<u>U35000</u>
Fast Acting Brake Rectifiers [GPE, GPU & PMG]	<u>U35100</u>
Current sensing relay	<u>U35200</u>
NEMA/IEC/SERVO Inputs Adapters & Their Couplings	<u>U45100</u>
NEMA or IEC Input Adapter Lubrication Options	<u>U45250</u>
NEMA or IEC Input Adapter with Grease Fitting	<u>U45255</u>
Solid Input Shaft [W]	<u>U45300</u>
Motor Mount Platform [MK]	<u>U45400</u>
Sugar Scoop	<u>U45500</u>
NSD tuph Touch-Up Kit	<u>U65100</u>
Terms & Conditions of Sale	Terms

## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

NORD Gear Corporation Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673



**GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS** 



### 1. Importance of the operating instructions

These operating instructions are intended to provide general information and safety guidelines. It is the responsibility of the buyer, machine builder, installer and user of the NORD product to make sure that all the proper safetynotes and operating instructions have been reviewed and understood. If the contents of this instruction or any applicable operating instructions are not understood, please consult NORD.

# $\wedge$

### WARNING

Electric motors, gearmotors, electrical brakes, variable frequency drives, and gear reducers contain potentially dangerous high-voltage, rotating-components and surfaces that may become hot during operation. All work involved in the transport, connection, commissioning and maintenance of any NORD product must be carried out by qualified and responsible technicians.

### 2. Inspect incoming freight

Before accepting shipment from the freight company, thoroughly inspect the NORD equipment for any shipping and handling damage. If any goods called for in the bill of lading or express receipt are damaged, or if the quantity is short, do not accept until the freight express agent makes an appropriate notation on your freight bill or express receipt. If any concealed loss or damage is discovered later, notify your freight carrier or express agent at once, and request a formal review of your claim.

Claims for loss or damage in shipment must not be deducted from the NORD invoice, nor should payment of the NORD invoice be withheld awaiting adjustment of such claims, as the carrier guarantees safe delivery. NORD will try to assist in collecting claims for loss or damage during shipment; however, this willingness on our part does not remove the transportation company's responsibility in reimbursing you for collection of claims or replacement of material.

### 3. Obtaining detailed operating instructions

One can receive the detailed installation and maintenance instructions by entering a serial number (or NORD order number) at the appropriate location on the NORD web site.

- i. Record the serial number from your gearmotor, gear reducer, or motor nameplate, or record the serial number found on your order confirmation.
- ii. Go to **www.nord.com/docs** to download the appropriate operating instructions.

### EXAMPLE: www.nord.com/docs

#### Unit documentation

		-	
200836833-40	00	۵,	
Sales Order Number	200836833-400		
Model Type	SK9382AZSH-180MH/4 TW RD VZ		
Mounting Position	M4		
Туре	Name	Pages	Size
📆 U10000 - General	Instructions	2	(51.97 KB)
📆 U10040 - Storage		1	(36.77 KB)
📆 U10060 - Unit Inst	allation	2	(60.94 KB)
U10270 - Keyed H	lollow Shaft	2	(70.52 KB)
🔂 U10750 - Helical :	and Bevel Reducer Lubrication	2	(75.66 KB)
D11000 - Helical a	and Bevel Lubrication Types	2	(58.10 KB)
📆 U11900 - Lubricat	ion Capacity - Clincher Shaft Mounted	1	(894.56 KB)
📆 U14200 - Oil Plug	and Vent Locations - Clicher Parallel Shaft	1	(125.83 KB)
D15200 - Parts Li	st - Clincher Parallel Shaft	12	(519.50 KB)
📆 Complete Manual	for 200836833-400 (PDF Format)	31	(2.25 MB)
T	0000000 400 (700 [1)		(0.04.00)

### 4. Intended use

NORD is a supplier of electric motors, gearmotors, reducers, electromechanical brakes, mechanical variators, and electrical variable frequency drives that are intended for commercial installations on larger systems and machines.

# NORD does not accept any liability for damage or injury caused by:

- Inappropriate use, operation or adaptation of the drive system.
- Unauthorized removal of housing covers, safety and inspection covers, guarding, etc.
- Unauthorized modifications to the drive system.
- Improper servicing or repair work on the drive system.
- Damage caused during shipment or transportation.
- Disregard of the important Safety Notes or Operating Instructions.



**GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS** 



### 5. Notes concerning warranty and liability

All units are supplied according to the terms described in our standard "Conditions of Sale." The unit limited warranty is also defined in our "Conditions of Sale" and is located in the back of our product catalogs as well as the back of your order invoice.

All NORD Safety Notes and all related NORD Operating instructions shall be considered up-to-date at the time in which they were compiled by the buyer, machine builder, installer or user. NORD reserves the right to incorporate technical modifications and information updates to any safety/operating instructions that are within the scope of providing additional knowledge or clarification, communicating design changes, or product enhancements. Information updates may include any NORD product, or subsequent products purchased and supplied by NORD; No specific claims can be derived from the information or illustrations and descriptions contained in the safety notes or related operating instructions.

 $\triangle$ 

### WARNING

NORD assumes no liability for personal injury, equipment damage or malfunctions resulting from failure to comply with any installation safety notes. The applicable national, regional, and local work regulations and safety requirements must also be complied with. Failure to comply with any safety notes or regulations may result in serious injury, damage to property, or even death.

#### 6. Checklist for installation and operation

- ✓ Verify that the purchased NORD product has been supplied with the expected accessories & options. Check the received goods and packing slip to make sure items are properly received.
- ✓ Make sure that you have all of the required Operating Instructions for your NORD electric motor, gearmotor, reducer, electromechanical brake, mechanical variable speed drives, or electrical variable frequency drives.
- ☑ Consult NORD if you feel you are missing any documentation or if you have questions.



# **SAFETY NOTES**



**RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -**

### 1. Safety & information symbols

All work including transportation, storage, installation, electrical connection, commissioning, servicing, maintenance and repair must be performed only by qualified specialists or personnel. It is recommended that repairs to NORD Products are carried out by the NORD Service Department. Instructions related to operational safety will be emphasized as shown.

Symbol	Meaning	
Â	Danger, Caution or Warning - Severe risk or danger of personal injury or death by working around dan- gerously high electrical voltage or moving machinery. Proper safety precautions must be taken.	
<b>NOTICE</b> Notice - Care must be taken to avoid the possibi of damaging the drive unit, driven machine, or environment.		
1	Important Note - Useful note or tip to help assure trouble-free operation.	
•••	Material Disposal Note - Important note concerning suggested material disposal.	

### 2. Safety warnings

<u>/!</u>	<b>DANGER</b>
•	All work involved in the transport, connection, commissioning and maintenance of any NORD product must be carried out by qualified and respon- sible technicians. All applicable national, regional, and local work regulations and safety requirements must also be complied with. NORD assumes no liability for personal injury, accidental death, or equipment damage and malfunctions resulting from failure to comply with installation or operating instructions, safety notes, or any work regulations and laws!

- · Gear unit installation and maintenance work may only be performed when no power is available to the prime mover or motor. Electric motors, electrical brakes, and variable frequency drives, contain potentially dangerous high-voltage. Prior to installation or maintenance, shut down the power at the circuit breaker or power switch. While working on the drive, make sure the power from the prime mover is isolated or secured on "lock-out" to prevent accidental start-up and to safeguard against injury!
- Surfaces of motors and gear units may become hot during operation or shortly after start-up. In some instances additional protection against accidental contact may be necessary. Use caution to avoid burns or serious injury!

### 3. Observe published performance range & nameplate data

### NOTICE

Observe the data on all reducer nameplates and verify published ratings for the NORD item/s in question. Do not operate any NORD equipment outside the published performance range. Failure to comply may result in damage to the drive unit, driven machine, or the environment.

#### **U.S.** Nameplate



### Model/Type

- Serial Number
- Gear Ratio
- 4 Service Factor
- **6** Torque Rating
- Output Speed RPM
- Mounting Position

#### **European Nameplate**



### 4. Transportation and handling

Make sure that all eyebolts and lifting lugs are tight and lift only at designed points. Protect the mounting surface from possible damage during transportation.

# WARNING

Do not attach other machinery or loads to the NORD assembly, the supplied lifting bolts are not designed for this purpose and may result in drive damage or personal injury.

If the gearmotor or assembly is equipped with two suspension eye bolts, then both locations should be used for transportation and placement of the unit; in this case the tension force of the slings must not exceed a 45° angle.

In some instances it may be appropriate to use additional lifting straps or slings in order to assure safe transportation of the assembly. Always use sufficiently rated handling equipment and ensure that adequate safety measures are taken to protect personnel from injury during transportation. Once the NORD assembly is properly installed, remove the transportation fixtures.

# NORD Gear Corporation

Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

# **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

À







- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

### 7. DISPOSAL

# MATERIAL DISPOSAL

Properly dispose of all used gear units and internal parts in accordance with all local regulations. In particular, all lubricants must be properly collected and disposed.

For confirmation of specific materials used in a specific reducer or gearmotor assembly, please consult NORD with the appropriate unit identification or serial number.

Components	Material
Gear wheels, shafts, rolling bearings, parallel keys, snap rings, spacers, shims, etc.	Steel
Gear housing and housing components	Cast iron or Aluminum (depending on type and size)
Worm gears	Bronze alloy
Radial seals, sealing caps, and rubber components	Elastomers with some steel
Coupling components	Plastic or Elastomer with Steel
Housing gaskets and flat oil seals	Asbestos-free sealing or gasket material (various types used)
Gear Oil	Mineral, SHC-Synthetic or PG-Synthetic (can vary)



# **STORAGE & COMMISSIONING**



RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

### 1. Storage

1

### **IMPORTANT NOTE**

For storage periods longer than 9 months, or for storage in less than desirable conditions, please consult NORD for recommendations.

Storage for up to 9 months is possible, so long as the following conditions are observed:

- Store the gear unit in its actual mounting position in accordance with the specified oil fill-level, in a clean and dry temperature controlled area. Avoid temperature fluctuations within the range of 0°C and 40°C (32°F to 104°F) and avoid relative humidity conditions in excess of 60%.
- Protect all exposed or unpainted shaft and flange surfaces with an anti-corrosion agent or grease.
- Store in a location free from shock and vibration, to avoid false brinelling of bearing elements and raceways.
- Whenever possible, rotate the shafts periodically, by hand if necessary, to help prevent brinelling (bearing damage) and to help keep the shaft seals pliable.
- Avoid direct exposure to the sun or UV light and aggressive or corrosive materials in the environment (ozone, gases, solvents, acids, caustic solutions, salts, radioactivity, etc.

### 2. Commissioning

Prior to gear unit start-up, complete the following:

• Please check your gear unit for a vent and if applicable to your product, remove the sealing plug to activate.

# NOTICE

To prevent build-up of excessive pressure, sealed vents must be activated as shown prior to gear unit start up. Excessive pressure may cause damage to internal gearbox components and leakage.



Sealed vent

Activated vent

• Check the lubricant and be sure the gear unit is filled with the proper oil type, to the proper level, as determined by the mounting position.

1

# **IMPORTANT NOTE**

Some smaller gear units are supplied as maintenance free/ lubricated for life gear units. Oil level may not be checked on some of these units.

- Check the condition of all shaft seals and all assembled flange gasket areas. If any change is detected in the shape, color, hardness or permeability, or if any leaks are detected, the corresponding shaft seals and/or gaskets must be replaced.
- Remove all anti-corrosive metal protectant from otherwise bare metal surfaces. Follow product manufacturers directions and warnings during surface protection removal.
- Check the resistance of all motor and brake windings to verify the integrity of the winding insulation and inspect all terminal box openings and wire connection areas to verify that all components are dry and free of corrosion.



**STORAGE & COMMISSIONING** 



RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE ·

### 3. Long-Term Storage

By taking special precautions, problems such as seal leakage and reducer failure due to the lack of lubrication, improper lubrication quantity, or contamination can be avoided. The following precautions will protect gear reducers during periods of extended storage:

- Store the gear unit in its actual mounting position in accordance with the specified oil fill-level, in a clean and dry temperature controlled area. Avoid temperature fluctuations within the range of 0°C and 40°C (32°F to 104°F) and avoid relative humidity conditions in excess of 60%.
- Fill the reducer full with oil that is compatible with the product normally used or recommended during service.
- Apply grease to all unpainted or unprotected shafts, bores, keyways, flange surfaces, tapped holes, and to the exterior of all oil seals.
- Store in a location free from shock and vibration, to avoid false brinelling of bearing elements and raceways.
- Once every few months rotate the input shaft approximately 10-20 revolutions to redistribute the weight of gears and shafts and to prevent brinnelling of the bearings and drying of the seal track.
- Avoid direct exposure to the sun or UV light and aggressive or corrosive materials in the environment (ozone, gases, solvents, acids, caustic solutions, salts, radioactivity, etc.)

### 4. Commissioning After Long-Term Storage

• Please check your gear unit for a vent and if applicable to your product, remove the sealing plug to activate.

### NOTICE

To prevent build-up of excessive pressure, sealed vents must be activated as shown prior to gear unit start up. Excessive pressure may cause damage to internal gearbox components and leakage.



Sealed vent

Activated vent

- Remove all anti-corrosive metal protectant from otherwise bare metal surfaces. Follow product manufacturers directions and warnings during surface protection removal.
- Drain the reducer and refill it with the proper type and amount of lubricant.
- Observe start-up and initial operation to make sure there are no seal or gasket leaks, or unusual sounds, vibration or heat rise during operation.
- Check the resistance of all motor and brake windings to verify the integrity of the winding insulation and inspect all terminal box openings and wire connection areas to verify that all components are dry and free of corrosion.



# **UNIT INSTALLATION**



- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

### 1. Installation site

Drives must be properly installed if they are to produce the rated torque. Improper installation may lead to oil leaks, reduced life, or even catastrophic failure. NORD gear drives and motors are intended to be installed at a suitable mounting site under the following conditions:

- Unimpeded airflow to and around the units.
- · Accessibility to oil drain, level and breather plugs.
- On brakemotors, allow adequate space for removing the fan guard and replacing and adjusting the brake.
- Mounting surfaces must be flat, torsionally rigid, and dampened against vibration.
- Unless special measures are taken, the immediate vicinity around the gear drive or motor should not be exposed to any aggressive or corrosive substances, contaminated air, ozone, gases, solvents, acids, alkalis, salts, radioactivity, etc.

#### 2. Mounting position

Reducer mounting position charts illustrate the standard mounting positions for horizontal and vertical mounting. All gear units are assembled with the oil fill-level, oil-drain and vent plugs installed in their proper locations, **according to the customer-specified mounting position**. For mounting orientations other than shown consult NORD Gear.

### NOTICE

Improper oil levels may lead to premature component wear and diminished service life. The gear reducer may not receive proper lubrication if the unit is not mounted in the position for which it is designed. Observe the mounting position designated on the reducer nameplate, or specified in the order acknowledgement. Consult NORD prior to changing mounting position in the field. While it is often possible to simply relocate the oil fill-level and vent locations, and adjust the oil fill amount, in some cases, different mounting positions may lend themselves to different internal construction features.

### 3. Reducer mounting

- The support foundation must be straight, level and flat. Whether the gear unit is foot-mounted or flangemounted, NORD recommends that the straightness and flatness of the customer-supplied support foundation follow **Table 1**.
- The gear unit must be properly aligned with the driven shaft of the machine in order to prevent additional stress or load forces from being imposed upon the gear unit.
- To facilitate oil drainage it may be desirable to elevate the gear box foundation above the surrounding support structure.
- All bolting surfaces must be clean and free from contamination and corrosion.

#### Table 1: Recommended Straightness and Flatness of Customer-Supplied Support Foundation

Above (in)	To & Including (in)	General Tolerance on Straigtness & Flatness ISO 2768-2, Tolerance Class K
0.00	0.39	+/- 0.002 in
0.39	1.18	+/- 0.004 in
1.18	3.9	+/- 0.008 in
3.9	11.8	+/- 0.016 in
11.8	39	+/- 0.024 in
39	118	+/- 0.031 in

Above (mm)	To & Including (mm)	General Tolerance on Straigtness & Flatness ISO 2768-2, Tolerance Class K
0	10	+/- 0.05 mm
10	30	+/- 0.1 mm
30	100	+/- 0.2 mm
100	300	+/- 0.4 mm
300	1000	+/- 0.6 mm
1000	3000	+/- 0.8 mm

Straightness: Based upon the length of the corresponding line. Flatness: Based upon the longer lateral surface or the

diameter of the circular surface.

# ĩ

### **IMPORTANT NOTE**

The responsibility for the design and construction of the support foundation is with the user. The foundation must be adequate to withstand normal operating loads and possible overloads while maintaining alignment to attached system components under such loads. *Motors and drive components mounted on prefabricated base plates can become misaligned during shipment. Always check alignment after installation.* 

### 4. Steel foundation

An engineered structural steel foundation should be designed to provide adequate rigidity and prevent loads from distorting the housing or causing misalignment of internal gears and shafts. When foot-mounting the gear reducer, a base plate or sole plate with suitable thickness (generally equal or greater than the thickness of the drive feet) should be securely bolted to steel supports and extend under the entire gear drive assembly. When flange-mounting the gear unit, the bulk head plate must be engineered to minimize buckling distortions and support the cantilevered weight of the gear unit or gear motor.

### NOTICE

Do not weld on the gear unit or use the gear unit as an earth or ground connection for any welding procedure as this may cause permanent damage to the bearings and gears.

# **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378



# **UNIT INSTALLATION**



RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

#### 5. Concrete foundation

If a concrete foundation is used, allow the concrete to set firmly before bolting down the gear drive. Grout structural steel mounting pads and bolts of sufficient size into the concrete, to adequately distribute the load stress onto the concrete foundation.

### Figure 1: Concrete Foundation



### 6. Bolt connections for footed & flange mounted units

NORD footed reducers and flange-mount reducers (with B5 flange) have clearance designed into the mounting holes to allow for some minor adjustments in alignment. Bolt size, strength and quantity should be verified to insure proper torque reaction capacity whatever the mounting arrangement. Tightening torque for gear reducer mounting bolts, and recommended fastener grades, are provided in Table 2.

Table 2A: Tightenir	g Torque for Inch	<b>Reducer Mounting Bolts</b>
---------------------	-------------------	-------------------------------

	Grade SAE 5 / ASTM A449		Grade	SAE 8
(in)	(lb-ft)	(Nm)	(lb-ft)	(Nm)
1/4-20	7.1	9.6	10.0	13.6
5/16-18	16	21	22	30
3/8-16	28	37	39	53
1/2-13	69	93	98	132
5/8-11	138	188	195	264
3/4-10	247	334	348	472
7/8-9	396	537	558	757
1-8	592	802	833	1,130
1 1/8-7	-	-	1,233	1,672
1 1/4-7	-	-	1,717	2,327
1 3/8-6	-	-	2,267	3,073
1 1/2-6	-	-	2,983	4,045
1 3/4-5	-	-	4,458	6,045

- Calculated tightening torques are based a conventional 60°, clean and dry (un-lubricated) thread, with thread-friction and head-friction equal to 0.15.
- When using inch-fasteners, NORD recommends a minimum Grade SAE 5 (ASTM A-449) for sizes up to 1-8 UNC, and Grade SAE 8 for all larger sizes.

### NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

Thread Size

Table 2B: Tightening Torque for Metric Reducer Mounting Bolts
---

Above						
	ISO Gr	ade 8.8	ISO Gra	de 10.9	ISO Gra	de 12.9
(mm)	(lb-ft)	(Nm)	(lb-ft)	(Nm)	(lb-ft)	(Nm)
M4	2.4	3.2	3.5	4.7	4.1	5.5
M5	4.7	6.4	6.9	9.3	8.1	11
M6	8	11	12	16	14	19
M8	20	27	29	39	34	46
M10	39	53	58	78	67	91
M12	68	92	100	135	110	155
M14	107	145	159	215	180	250
M16	170	230	247	335	290	390
M18	240	325	343	465	400	540
M20	339	460	487	660	570	770
M22	465	630	664	900	770	1,050
M24	583	790	848	1,150	960	1,300
M27	848	1,150	1,217	1,650	1,440	1,950
M30	1,180	1,600	1,660	2,250	1,950	2,650
M36	2,050	2,780	2,884	3,910	3,470	4,710
M42	3,297	4,470	4,639	6,290	5,560	7,540
M48	4,940	6,700	7,010	9,500	8,260	11,200

- Calculated tightening torques are based on a conventional 60°, clean and dry (un-lubricated) thread, with thread-friction and head-friction equal to 0.15.
- When using metric-fasteners, NORD recommends a minimum ISO Grade 8.8 bolt.

### 7. Mounting the prime mover

When the motor is not flange mounted or integrally mounted to the gearbox, it is important to properly secure and align the gear drive with respect to the driven machine before attempting to align the prime mover or motor.

- A. After the main gear drive is properly aligned and bolted in place, align the prime mover with respect to the reducer input shaft.
- B. Use shims under the feet of the prime mover as needed, and secure in place with the proper mounting bolts. Dowel pins may be field-installed to help prevent misalignment and ensure proper realignment if removed for service.

# IMPORTANT NOTE

When using a high speed coupling connection between the prime mover and the reducer, check alignment per the coupling manufacturers recommendations. If the coupling is misaligned, the reducer alignment or shimming is incorrect. Re-align the gear reducer and re-check the high-speed coupling alignment before realigning the motor.

1



# **SOLID SHAFT CONNECTIONS**



À



### 1. Solid shaft diameter tolerance

Reducer input and output shaft extensions have a diameter tolerance as specified in **Table 1**.

### Table 1: Solid Shaft Diameter Tolerance

Above	To & Including	Toleran	ce
Ø (IN)	Ø (III)	(in)	
0.375	1.750	+0.0000 / -0.	.0005
1.750	7.500	+0.0000 / -0.	.0010
Above	To & Including	Tolerance	ISO 286-2
ø (mm)	ø (mm)	(mm)	Fit Class
ø <b>(mm)</b> 10	ø <b>(mm)</b> 18	(mm) +0.012 / +0.001	Fit Class k6
ø (mm) 10 18	ø (mm) 18 30	(mm) +0.012 / +0.001 +0.015 / +0.002	Fit Class k6 k6
Ø (mm) 10 18 30	ø (mm) 18 30 50	(mm) +0.012 / +0.001 +0.015 / +0.002 +0.018 / +0.002	Fit Class k6 k6 k6
ø (mm) 10 18 30 50	ø (mm) 18 30 50 80	(mm) +0.012 / +0.001 +0.015 / +0.002 +0.018 / +0.002 +0.030 / +0.011	Fit Class k6 k6 k6 m6
Ø (mm) 10 18 30 50 80	ø (mm) 18 30 50 80 120	(mm) +0.012 / +0.001 +0.015 / +0.002 +0.018 / +0.002 +0.030 / +0.011 +0.035 / +0.013	Fit Class k6 k6 k6 m6 m6
Ø (mm)           10           18           30           50           80           120	ø (mm) 18 30 50 80 120 180	(mm) +0.012 / +0.001 +0.015 / +0.002 +0.018 / +0.002 +0.030 / +0.011 +0.035 / +0.013 +0.040 / +0.015	Fit Class k6 k6 m6 m6 m6 m6

### 2. Fitting drive elements onto the reducer solid shaft

Solid input and output shaft extensions are provided with a drill and tap feature as indicated in Table 2. When installing drive elements such as coupling hubs, pulleys, sprockets, or gears, NORD recommends using the threaded hole in the end of the shaft, along with a suitable assembly device fitted into the threaded hole.



### Table 2: Solid Shaft End - Threaded Holes

Above	To & Including	Tap Size & Depth
ø (in)	ø (in)	(in)
0.375	0.500	10-24 x 0.43 in
0.500	0.875	1/4-20 x 0.59 in
0.875	0.938	5/16-18 x 0.71 in
0.938	1.100	3/8-16 x 0.87 in
1.100	1.300	1/2-13 x 1.10 in
1.300	1.875	5/8-11 x 1.42 in
1.875	3.500	3/4-10 x 1.73 in
3.500	7.500	1-8 x 2.63 in
5.125	8.875	1 1/4 - 7 x 3.15*
6.000	8.875	1 3/8 - 6 x 3.46**
Above	To &	Tap Size & Depth
Above	To & Including	Tap Size & Depth
Above ø (mm)	To & Including ø (mm)	Tap Size & Depth (mm)
Above ø (mm) 10	To & Including Ø (mm) 13	Tap Size & Depth (mm) M4 x 10 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16	Tap Size & Depth (mm) M4 x 10 mm M5 x 12.5 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21 24	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24 30	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm           M10 x 22 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21 24 30	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24 30 38	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm           M10 x 22 mm           M12 x 28 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21 24 30 38	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24 30 38 50	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm           M10 x 22 mm           M12 x 28 mm           M16 x 36 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21 24 30 38 50	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24 30 38 50 85	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm           M10 x 22 mm           M12 x 28 mm           M16 x 36 mm           M20 x 42 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21 24 30 38 50 85	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24 30 38 50 85 130	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm           M10 x 22 mm           M12 x 28 mm           M16 x 36 mm           M20 x 42 mm           M24 x 50 mm
Above ø (mm) 10 13 16 21 24 30 38 50 85 130	To & Including Ø (mm) 13 16 21 24 30 38 50 85 130 225	Tap Size & Depth           (mm)           M4 x 10 mm           M5 x 12.5 mm           M6 x 16 mm           M8 x 19 mm           M10 x 22 mm           M16 x 36 mm           M20 x 42 mm           M24 x 50 mm           M30 x 60 mm*

\* Only used on the SK9096.1 Helical-Bevel Gear Unit.

\*\* Only used on the SK10382.1 & SK11382.1 CLINCHER<sup>™</sup> gear units.

### NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

01.31.17

# NOTICE

**DO NOT DRIVE** or **HAMMER** the coupling hub, pulley, sprocket, or gear into place. An endwise blow to the reducer shaft can generate damaging axial forces and cause damage to the reducer housing, bearings or internal components.

# WARNING

To avoid serious injury the user must provide suitable safety guards for all rotating shafts and shaft components such as couplings, chain drives, belt drives, etc. All guarding must adhere to local regulations and safety standards.

### 3. Installing interference-fit hubs to the reducer shaft

Prior to installing any interference-fit hubs to the reducer shaft, consult with the manufacturer to determine proper assembly and fit. Interference-fits usually require heating the coupling, sprocket or gear hub, per the manufacturer's recommendations. Coupling hub installation typically follows ANSI/AGMA 9002-A86. Always make sure the reducer shaft seals are protected from the heat source. Apply uniform heat to the drive element hub to prevent distortion. NORD does not recommend heating the drive element hub beyond 212°F to 275°F (100°C to 135° C).

 $\wedge$ 

1

### WARNING

When using heat to mount a drive element hub, do not use open flame in a combustible atmosphere or near flammable materials. Use suitable protection to avoid burns or serious injury.

**IMPORTANT NOTE** 

When using external chain or belt drives, make sure the reducer is sized so that the shaft and bearings have adequate capacity. To avoid unnecessary bearing loads and additional shaft deflection, mount all power take-off devices (sprockets, pulleys, etc.) so that the applied load center is as close to the gear housing as possible and check component alignment and tension of any belts or chains per the manufacturer's recommendation. Do not over tighten the belts or chains.

Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673


# **SOLID SHAFT CONNECTIONS**



## 4. Coupling installation

The performance and life of any coupling depends upon how well it is installed. Coupling hubs are typically mounted flush with the shaft ends, unless specifically ordered for overhung mounting. Shaft couplings should be installed according to the coupling manufacturer's recommendations for gap, angular and parallel alignment. To help obtain critical shaft alignment coupling hubs may be installed to the machine shafts prior to final shimming or tightening of the foundation bolts. Proper coupling alignment allows for thermal and mechanical shaft movement during operation and ensures that only torque (no radial load) is transmitted between the mating shafts.

## Coupling gap and angular alignment

The shaft gap must be sufficient to accommodate any anticipated thermal or mechanical axial movement. When setting the coupling gap, insert a spacer or shim stock equal to the required spacing or gap between the coupling hub faces. Measure the clearance using feeler gauges at 90-degree intervals, to verify the angular alignment.

## Parallel (or offset) alignment

Mount a dial indicator to one coupling hub, and rotate this hub, sweeping the outside diameter of the other hub. The parallel or offset misalignment is equal to one-half of the total indicator reading. Another method is to rest a straight edge squarely on the outside diameter of the hubs at 90° intervals and measure any gaps with feeler gauges. The maximum gap measurement is the parallel or offset misalignment.

## Check alignment

After both angular and parallel alignments are within specified limits, tighten all foundation bolts securely and re-check critical alignment. If any of the specified limits for alignment are exceeded, realign the coupling.

## 5. Installing sheaves (pulleys), sprockets and gears

To avoid unnecessary bearing loads and additional shaft deflection, mount all power take-off devices (sprockets, pulleys, gears, etc.) so that the applied load center is as close to the gear housing as possible, as shown in **Figure 2**.

### Figure 2: Sprocket or Gear Mounting



Align the driver sheave or sprocket with the driven sheave or sprocket by placing a straight-edge length-wise across the face of the sheaves or sprockets. Alignment of bushed sheaves and sprockets should be checked only after bushings have been tightened. Check horizontal shaft alignment by placing one leg of a square or a level vertically against the face of the sheave or sprocket.

Always check component alignment and tension any belts or chains per the manufacturer's recommendation. The ideal belt or chain tension allows proper wrap of the driver and driven wheels, while maintaining the lowest possible tension of the belts or chain, so that no slipping occurs under load conditions. Check belt or chain tension frequently over the first 24 to 48 hours of operation.

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

When using external chain or belt drives, make sure the reducer is sized so that the shaft and bearings have adequate capacity. To avoid unnecessary bearing loads and additional shaft deflection, mount all power take-off devices (sprockets, pulleys, etc.) so that the applied load center is as close the gear housing as possible and check component alignment and tension of any belts or chains per the manufacturer's recommendation. Do not over tension the belts or chains.

## 6. Outboard pinion gear alignment

Align outboard pinion gears and adjust the gear tooth clearance according to the manufacturer's recommendations, checking for acceptable outboard pinion tooth contact. The foundation bolts may have to be loosened and the gear unit moved slightly to obtain proper gear tooth contact. After the unit is moved to correct tooth contact, the prime mover may need to be realigned.

1



# HAFT FIXING KIT



## **RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE**

3. Assembly

## 1. Shaft fixing kit - basic design

The NORD Fixing Kit provides a method for securing the reducer in an axial direction, after the keyed-hollow shaft reducer is mounted onto the machine shaft. The fixing kit prevents the reducer from shifting or walking out of place during operation. NORD offers a variety of standard fixing kits, based upon bore size, as shown on Page 2 of this manual.

## Figure 1 – Fixing kit components



## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

For installation of the keyed-hollow bore reducer to the machine-shaft, see user manual U10270.

## 2. Assembly types

1

There are two types of assembly methods commonly used for securing the fixing kit.

## Figure 2 – Fixing kit assembly methods



Type 2

The machine shaft is shouldered and is pulled tight against the hollow-shaft; the snap-ring is no longer required.



## NOTICE

The maximum edge break on the solid machine shaft must not exceed the values shown on Page 2 of this manual. Otherwise the load-bearing capacity of the snap-ring will be reduced and may result in failure.

## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

## A. If using a Type 1 assembly, secure the appropriate snapring into the bore of the reducer. With Type 2 assembly, no snap-ring is required.

- B. Draw the hollow bore gear reducer onto the machine shaft as instructed in U10270. Remember to apply a suitable assembly paste or anti-seize compound to the mating shafts.
- C. Install the retaining washer over the end of the hollow bore.
- D. Secure the appropriate cap-screw into the machine shaft and tighten the screw based upon the assembly type, as noted below. Then install the protective plug over the screw hole.

## Type 1 - Screw tightening

Tighten until lightly snug and secure the screw with a threadlocking compound to prevent the screw from backing out.

## NOTICE

Over tightening the retaining screw may cause the snap ring to be pulled out of its seating groove, causing damage to the hollow-bore or snap ring.

## Type 2 - Screw tightening

Follow the cap screw manufactures guidelines and tighten the screw to the proper torque, based upon the bolt grade and material. For reference tightening torque values, also see manual U10060, Table 2.

## 4. Disassembly

When using Type 2 assembly, it is possible to design a simple disassembly tool to allow easier removal of the hollow-bore reducer. The solid shaft is shouldered to rest against the hollow-bore of the reducer. The machine shaft is supported in both of the hollow bore land areas, but the overall length is reduced compared to Type 1 assembly.



## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

For suggestions on how to construct a disassembly tool for a particular reducer and bore size, please consult NORD's application engineering department.

**NORD Gear Corporation** 



# **SHAFT FIXING KIT**

## **RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE**



## 5. Standard fixing kit size offerings

NORD offers a variety of standard fixing kit sizes as shown by the following tables.

Shaft	Bolt	Allowab	le Thrust	Max. Edge
Bore	Size	Groove 🛛	Ring 🕄	Break 🛛
		lb	lb	in
[in]		[N]	[N]	[mm]
	40.22	730	520	0.02
0.500	10-32	[3255]	[2300]	[0.5]
0.750	1/4 20	1800	560	0.04
0.750	1/4-20	[7905]	[2500]	[1]
1 000	2/9.16	2900	1000	0.04
1.000	3/8-10	[13020]	[4600]	[1]
1 199	7/16-14	5100	1000	0.04
1.100	7/10-14	[22630]	[4700]	[1]
1 250	7/16-14	5100	1000	0.04
1.250	7/10-14	[22630]	[4700]	[1]
1 375	5/8-11	6500	1400	0.06
1.575	5/0 11	[29140]	[6400]	[1.5]
1 438	5/8-11	6900	1500	0.06
	3/0 11	[30690]	[6500]	[1.5]
1.500	5/8-11	7800	1500	0.06
		[34875]	[6/00]	[1.5]
1.625	5/8-11	9900	1900	0.08
-		[44020]	[8400]	[2]
1.688	5/8-11	10500	0081	0.08
		[46810]	[8200]	[2]
1.938	5/8-11	11100	1900	0.08
		[49600]	[8400]	
2.000	5/8-11	[62775]	[12100]	80.0 [c]
		1/100	2700	
2.063	5/8-11	[62775]	[12100]	0.08
		16800	2900	[2]
2.188	5/8-11	[7/865]	[13000]	[2]
		17/100	2900	0.08
2.375	3/4-10	[77190]	[13000]	[2]
		17400	2900	0.08
2.438	3/4-10	[77190]	[13000]	[2]
		19600	4700	0.10
2.750	3/4-10	[87110]	[21000]	[2.5]
	2/2 / 2	20900	4700	0.10
2.938	3/4-10	[93000]	[21000]	[2.5]
2 100	2/4 40	27700	7000	0.12
J. 100	5/4-10	[123225]	[31200]	[3]
2 120	2// 10	29300	7000	0.12
5.450	5/4-10	[130200]	[31400]	[3]
3 625	3//1-10	30900	7000	0.12
5.025	5/4-10	[137330]	[31400]	[3]
3 938	7/8-9	32400	6900	0.12
5.550	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	[144305]	[30800]	[3]
4.000	7/8-9	39000	16400	0.12
		[173600]	[73000]	[3]
4.063	7/8-9	39000	16400	0.12
		[173600]	[73000]	[3]
4.375	7/8-9	41500	16200	0.12
		[184450]	[/2000]	[3]
4.438	7/8-9	41500	16200	0.12
		[184450]	[/2000]	[3]
4.750	7/8-9	44200	15/00	0.12
		[196850]	[/0000]	[3]
4.938	7/8-9	48000	15500	0.12
		[213900]	[03000]	[3]

## Table 1 - Standard fixing kit size offerings

Chaft Dalt

Upon request, additional hollow-bore sizes & fixing kit sizes may be offered.

## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

01.31.17

Shaft	Bolt	Allowab	Max. Edge	
Bore	Size	Groove 🛛	Ring 🕑	Break 🕘
		N	N	mm
[mm]		[lb]	[lb]	[in]
16	M5	Ν	lot applicable <b>(</b>	
20	M6	8370 [1900]	5600 [1300]	1.0 [0.04]
25	M10	12400 [2800]	7300 [1600]	1.0 [0.04]
30	M10	17515 [3900]	7200 [1600]	1.0 [0.04]
35	M12	29140 [6500]	8700 [1900]	1.5 [0.06]
40	M16	41850 [9400]	10900 [2400]	2.0 [0.08]
45	M16	46810 [10500]	10700 [2400]	2.0 [0.08]
50	M16	62775 [14100]	19000 [4300]	2.0 [0.08]
60	M20	74865 [16800]	29200 [6600]	2.0 [0.08]
70	M20	87110 [19600]	30300 [6800]	2.5 [0.10]
80	M20	115630 [26000]	56000 [12600]	2.5 [0.10]
90	M24	130200 [29300]	56000 [12600]	3.0 [0.12]
100	M24	144305 [32400]	55000 [12400]	3.0 [0.12]
110	M24	181350 [40800]	71000 [16000]	3.0 [0.12]
120	M24	196850 [44300]	70000 [15700]	3.0 [0.12]

Upon request, additional hollow-bore sizes and fixing kit sizes may be offered.

• This fixing kit is not supplied with a snap-ring. A Type 2 machine shaft is required.

- 2 Thrust load-bearing capacity of the groove is based upon using a hollow-shaft material with a yield-strength of at least 45,000 psi (310 N/mm<sup>2</sup>).
- **3** Thrust load-bearing capacity of the snap-ring is based upon a typical snap-ring material with a yield-strength of at least 30,500 psi (210 N/mm<sup>2</sup>).
- On the solid machine shaft, observe the maximum edge break (radius or chamfer) shown. A larger edge break will result in reduced load-bearing capacity of the snap-ring.





## REDUCER MOUNTING FOOTED & FLANGE MOUNT GEAR UNITS

## **RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE**



U10500 - 1 of 2

## 1. Foot-mounted reducers

When installing the foot-mounted gear unit, observe the flatness specifications and bolt tightening torque guidelines provided in U10060 and make sure the mating mounting surface and reducer feet are clean and free of debris. Use of shims under the feet of the gear unit may be required in order to align the output shaft to the driven equipment. Make sure that all feet are supported so that the housing will not distort when it is bolted down. Improper shimming will cause mis-alignment and may reduce the life of the gear unit or cause component failure. Dowel pins may be fieldinstalled to help prevent misalignment and ensure proper realignment if removed for service.



## 1 IN

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Gear units may be subjected to radial loads or side pull, caused by external chain drives or belt drives. In these instances it is recommended that the mounting base be designed with a slide-plate adjustment to accommodate extra slack in the chain or the belt after the feet are loosened. When using an external chain or belt drive, make sure the reducer is sized so that the shaft and bearings have adequate capacity.

## 2. Flange-mounted reducers (with B5 flange)

When using the B5 flange to mount the gear unit, the bulk head plate must be engineered to minimize buckling distortions and support the cantilevered weight of the gear reducer or gearmotor. When the mating hole is designed with the proper fit, the flange pilot tenon provides a means of accurately positioning the reducer while the hold-down bolts are properly secured; once the reducer is secured, the tenon helps prevent movement of the reducer and it helps locate the center of the reducer output shaft. The flange centering shoulder tolerance for standard units is listed in table 1. For units with NSD Tuph please see table 2 on the following page.



## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

## Table 1 : Flange Centering Shoulder Tolerance

Above	To & Includina	Tolerance	ISO 286-2					
ø (in)	ø (in)	(in)	Fit Class					
1.969	3.150	+0.0005 / -0.0003	j6					
3.150	4.724	+0.0005 / -0.0004	j6					
4.724	7.087	+0.0006 / -0.0004	j6					
7.087	9.055	+0.0006 / -0.0005	j6					
9.055	9.843	+0.0000 / -0.0011	h6					
9.843	12.402	+0.0000 / -0.0013	h6					
12.402	15.748	+0.0000 / -0.0014	h6					
15.748	19.685	+0.0000 / -0.0016	h6					
19.685	21.654	+0.0000 / -0.0017	h6					

Above	To & Including	Tolerance	ISO 286-2
ø (mm)	ø (mm)	(mm)	Fit Class
50	80	+0.012 / -0.007	j6
80	120	+0.013 / -0.009	j6
120	180	+0.014 / -0.011	j6
180	230	+0.016 / -0.013	j6
230	250	+0.000 / -0.029	h6
250	315	+0.000 / -0.032	h6
315	400	+0.000 / -0.036	h6
400	500	+0.000 / -0.040	h6
500	550	+0.000 / -0.044	h6

When installing the flange mounted gear unit, observe the flatness specifications and bolt tightening torque guidelines provided in U10060. Make sure the mating mounting surface and reducer flange are clean and free of debris. Use a straight edge or parallel bar to check for high spots on the mating mounting surface and remove any raised material around the mounting holes.

Set the gear unit into place and tighten the bolts until they are snug. Before final bolt-tightening check for any material gaps between the mating surfaces and if shimming is required, use "U" shaped shims at least 2 times the width of the bolt. Avoid over shimming a very irregular surface as this will make it very difficult to achieve proper alignment.

1

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

For heavy shock applications, it is advisable to field-install dowel pins through the mounting flange connection (in addition to the mounting bolts). This will help control flange movement or flange rotation and relieve the mounting bolts from this additional stress.



1

## REDUCER MOUNTING DOTED & FLANGE MOUNT GEAR UNITS



## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 3. Flange-mounted reducers (with B14 flange)

When using the B14 flange to mount the gear unit, the bulk head plate must be engineered to minimize buckling distortions and support the cantilevered weight of the gear reducer or gearmotor. When properly installed, the output flange of the reducer housing is designed to enable the permissible torques and radial forces to be reliably transmitted by the bolt connections. The flange centering shoulder tolerance for standard units is listed in table 1 on the previous page. For units with NSD Tuph please see table 2 below.



## IMPORTANT NOTE

When using the B14 flange-face for mounting, if dowel pin holes are provided in addition to the threaded holes, then it is advisable to also use the proper dowel pins, to help control flange movement or flange rotation and relieve the mounting bolts from this additional stress This is especially important for heavy shock applications.

## Table 2 : Flange Centering Shoulder Tolerance on NSD Tuph Units

Table 2 mange centering biloarder Telefante on top Tapit on to							
Above	To & Including	Tolerance					
ø (in)	ø (in)	(in)					
1.969	3.150	+0.0020 / +0.0013					
3.150	4.724	+0.0021 / +0.0012					
4.724	7.087	+0.0021 / +0.0011					
7.087	9.055	+0.0022 / +0.0011					
Above	To &	Tolerance					
ø (mm)	ø (mm)	(mm)					
50	80	+0.052 / +0.033					
80	120	+0.053 / +0.031					
120	180	+0.054 / +0.029					
100	220	0.050/0.007					

## 4. Foot & flange reducer housings

Some gear reducer housings are available with a foot and an output flange. Units with a foot and a B5 Flange are designated with the suffix XF after the primary model number and units with a B14 face-flange are designated with the suffix XZ after the primary model number. When a gear unit is provided with both a foot and a flange, the foot is consider the primary mounting surface. The flange is generally considered to be the secondary mounting option and it is intended that this surface be used for auxiliary add on elements that place minimal load stress on the reducer housing.

## NOTICE

To prevent overstress on the main gear unit housing, never tighten the reducer mounting feet and the mounting flange against one-another. Auxiliary add-on elements that are mounted to the reducer flange, must not transmit excessive force, torque or vibration to the main gear housing.





ELICAL & BEVEL REDUCER LUBRICATION

- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

## 1. Importance of proper lubrication

Proper gearbox lubrication is essential in order to reduce friction, heat, and component wear. Lubricants reduce heat and wear by inserting a protective "fluid boundary" between mating parts and preventing direct metal to metal contact. Lubricants also help prevent corrosion and oxidation, minimize foam, improve heat transfer, optimize reducer efficiency, absorb shock loads and reduce noise.

Most NORD reducers are shipped from the factory with a pre-determined oil fill level in accordance to the specified reducer size and mounting position.

## 2. Standard oil type

IVESYSTEMS

The following tables indicate the standard oil fill type used. Please see user manual U11000 for more specific information and for optional helical and bevel gear lubricants:

Serviceable Gear Units							
Helical In-line							
Clincher Parallel-Shaft							
Right-Angle Bevel	Standard Oil Fill:						
NORDBLOC <sup>®</sup> Series In-line	ISO VG 220, Mineral Oil						
NORDBLOC <sup>®</sup> .1 Series In-line							
Standard Series In-line							

## IMPORTANT NOTE

For shipping purposes, the following large Clincher<sup>™</sup> gear units are supplied without oil:

• Clincher<sup>™</sup> Sizes SK11282, SK11382, SK11382.1 and SK12382

## Maintenance-free / Lubricated For Life Gear Units

Clincher<sup>™</sup> sizes SK0182NB, SK0282NB & SK1382NB

NORDBLOC® Sizes SK172, SK272, SK371F, SK372, SK373, SK320

Standard Oil Fill: ISO VG220 SHC/PAO Synthetic Oil

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

Maintenance-free units are supplied as sealed units with no vent-plug. Consult NORD prior to ordering if interested in ordering any of the above sizes as serviceable gear units.

## 1

1

1

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Consult the sticker adjacent to the fill plug to determine the type of lubricant installed at the factory. Some units have special lubricants designed to operate in certain environments or intended to extend the service life or service temperature range of the lubricant. If in doubt about which lubricant is needed for a certain application, please contact NORD Gear.

## 3. Lubrication replacement

If the gear unit is filled with mineral oil, the lubricant should be replaced at least after every 10,000 operating hours or after every two years. If the gear unit is filled with synthetic oil, the lubricant should be replaced at least after every 20,000 operating hours or after every four years. Often gear reducers are exposed to extreme ambient conditions, hostile environments, wet conditions, or dirty and dusty operating areas. Especially in these situations, it is important to establish a condition-based oil service interval.

## 4. Oil viscosity

Viscosity, or the oil's resistance to shear under load, is often considered the single most important property of any gear oil.

- Often one will consider making a viscosity correction to the oil to improve the performance when operating the gear unit at low temperature or high temperature.
- In cases of extreme load conditions, gear pairs and antifriction bearings may be more susceptible to sliding or scuffing wear. In these operating conditions, it may also be beneficial to consider an increased lubrication viscosity and/or a lubrication with improved antiwear additive packages.

1

1

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

The user should consult with their primary lubrication supplier before considering changes in oil type or viscosity.

## 5. Maximum oil sump temperature limit

To prevent reducer overheating, the reducer's maximum oil sump temperature limit must not be exceeded for prolonged periods of operation (up to 3 hours continuous operation depending upon reducer size).

Oil Type	Maximum Oil Temperature Limit					
	NORD	AGMA 9005-D94				
Mineral	80-85°C (176-185°F)	95°C (203°F)				
Synthetic	105°C (220°F)	107°C (225°F)				

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Use caution when specifying gear reducers for high temperature service. If there is concern about exceeding the allowable safe operating temperatures, please consult NORD to discuss alternatives.

NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

08.04.17





## 6. The importance of routine oil analysis

DRIVESYSTEMS

Routine oil analysis, sound lubrication practices, and good tracking of oil performance trends will help establish proper lubrication maintenance and change-out intervals. To maximize equipment reliability, NORD Gear generally recommends a condition-based lubrication maintenance program. One may take exceptions to this general recommendation on sealed-for-life or maintenance-free gear units or smaller and less costly gear units. In these instances, the replacement cost of the gear unit is often small compared to the costs associated with this type of oil analysis program.

## NOTICE

NORD suggests replacing the gear oil if oil analysis indicates any of the following. Failure to replace the oil may cause internal damage to gearbox and diminished performance:

- Viscosity has changed by approximately 10% or more.
- Debris particles (silicon, dust, dirt or sand) exceed 25 ppm.
- Iron content exceeds 150-200 ppm.
- Water content is greater than 0.05% (500 ppm).
- The total acid number (TAN) tests indicate a significant level of oxidative break-down of the oil, and a critical reduction in performance; If the TAN number measured changes by more than 5% over the new oil, then an oil change would be recommended.

## 7. Mounting position and oil fill quantity

All NORD Gear reducers are shipped from the factory with a pre-determined oil fill level in accordance to the specified reducer size and mounting position. For additional information, please see the seperate mounting position diagrams and the corresponding oil fill quantity tables for the specified gear unit.

The gearbox nametag will indicate the mounting position that was provided. *For mounting orientations other than shown in the mounting position charts, please consult NORD Gear.* 

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Actual oil volume can vary slightly depending upon the gear case size, mounting and ratio. Prior to commissioning the reducer, check the oil-fill level using the reducer's oil-level plug and drain or add additional oil as needed. The minimum acceptable oil level is 0.15 in (4mm) below the oil level hole.

## 8. Oil plug locations

All gear units are assembled with the oil fill-level, oil-drain and vent plugs installed in their proper locations, according to the specified mounting position. All standard plugs are metric and utilize sealing gaskets between the head of the plug and the reducer housing.

## 9. Drain and fill-level plugs

All reducer drain plugs are metric socket head cap screws. For easier identification, it is NORD's standard practice to provide a hex-head screw for the fill-level plug. For ease of draining the used oil from the gear reducer, use the socket head screw located at the lowest part of the gearbox.



## 10. Vent plug locations

Reducer venting allows for air pressure differences that occur during operation, between the inner space of the reducer and the atmosphere, while ensuring leak-free operation. The AUTOVENT<sup>™</sup> is standard for all vented gear units, unless otherwise noted.

**AUTOVENT<sup>™</sup>** - The AUTOVENT<sup>™</sup> helps prevent bearing and gear damage by behaving like a check valve to block the entry of foreign material and prevent lubrication contamination from dust particles, moisture and air-borne process chemicals. The breather opens at approximately 0.3-0.9 psi during operation and closes tightly as the gearbox cools. This option is perfect for humid conditions and wash-down environments, helping to maintain proper oil cleanliness, while reducing foaming and oxidation.

## Figure 1 AUTOVENT™ Types



**Open Vent** - An optional open vent can be supplied by NORD. The open vent comes closed upon delivery with a transportation sealing plug (see Warning).

## NOTICE

To prevent build-up of excessive pressure, sealed vents must be activated as shown prior to gear unit start up. Excessive pressure may cause damage to internal components and cause leakage.



Sealed vent

Activated vent

Filtered Vent - NORD may offer an optional filtered vent, which allows gases to permeate, but does not allow dust and debris to pass through the vent.

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

1



## HELICAL & BEVEL REDUCER LUBRICATION TYPES

## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE



## Lubrication Tables – Helical and Bevel Gear Units

## **Standard Oil Lubricants**

ISO Viscosity	Oil Type	Ambient Temperature Range	Manufacturer Brand/Type	Notes
	MIN-EP	0 to 40°C (32 to 104°)	Mobilgear 600XP220	<b>60</b>
VG220	PAO-EP	-35 to 60°C (-31 to 140°F)	Mobil SHC Gear 220	<b>60</b>
-	FG	-5 to 40°C (23 to 104°F)	Fuchs FM220	۵

## **Optional Oil Lubricants**

ISO Viscosity	Oil Type	Ambient Temperature Range	Manufacturer Brand/Type	Notes
VG460	PAO-EP	-35 to 80°C (-31 to 176°F)	Mobil SHC Gear 460	-
	FG-PAO	-35 to 80°C (-31 to 176°F)	Mobil SHC Cibus 460	-
VG220	FG-PAO	-35 to 60°C (-31 to 140°F)	Mobil SHC Cibus 220	S
VG150	PAO-EP	-35 to 25°C (-31 to 77°F)	Mobil SHC Gear 150	-

## Grease Options (applied to greased bearings and seal cavities)

NLGI Grade	Grease Thickener	Grease Base Oil	Ambient Temperature Range	Manufacturer Brand/Type	Notes
NLGI 2	Li-Complex	MIN	-30 to 60°C (-22 to 140°F)	Mobil Grease XHP222	<b>60</b>
	Li-Complex	PAO	-40 to 80°C (-40 to 176°F)	Mobil / Mobilith SHC 220	60
	Polyurea	FG-PAO	-30 to 80°C (-22 to 176°F)	Mobil SHC Polyrex 222	۵

## Stocked Lubricants

- Standard product on serviceable gear units
- Standard product on maintenance free gear units

## 1

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

- The "Ambient Temperature" is intended to be an operation guideline based upon the typical properties of all the lubricant. The viscosity and other properties of the lubricant change based upon load, speed, ambient conditions, and reducer operating temperatures. The user should consult with their lubrication supplier & NORD gear before considering changes in oil type or viscosity.
- To prevent reducer overheating, observe the maximum operating oil temperature limits: Mineral Oil: 80-85 °C (176 – 180 °F).
   Synthetic Oil: 105 °C (225 °F).
- In the following instances, please consult NORD for specific recommendations:
  - $\sqrt{}$  Gear units will operate in high ambient temperature conditions exceeding 40 °C (104 °F).
  - $\sqrt{}$  Gear units will operate in cold ambient temperature conditions approaching 0 °C (32 °F) or lower.
  - $\sqrt{}$  Lower than an ISO VG100 viscosity oil is being considered for a cold-temperature service.
  - $\sqrt{}$  Fluid grease is required for lubricating the gear unit.
- Observe the general lubrication guidelines outlined in user manual U10750.

## **Oil Formulation Codes**

## **Lubrication Notes**

synthetic oil.

MIN-EP -Mineral Oil with EP Additive • Avoid using (EP) gear oils in worm gears that contain Synthetic Polyalphaolefin Oil with EP Additive PAO-EP sulfur-phosphorous chemistries, as these additives can PAO Synthetic Polyalphaolefin Oil react adversely with bronze worm gears and accelerate -Synthetic Polyglycol Oil PG wear. Food-Grade Oil FG Food grade lubricants must be in compliance with FDA 212 FG-PAO -Food-Grade, Synthetic Poyalphaolefin Oil CFR 178.3570 and qualify as a NSF-H1 lubricant. Please Food-Grade, Synthetic Polyglycol Oil FG-PG consult with lubrication manufacturer for more information. • When making a lubrication change, check with the lubrication supplier to assure compatibility and to obtain recommended cleaning or flushing procedures. • Do not to mix different oils with different additive packages or different base oil formulation types. Polyglycol (PG) oils are not miscible with other oil types and should never

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

be mixed with mineral oil or polyalphaolefin (PAO)

**NORD Gear Corporation** 



# HELICAL & BEVEL REDUCER LUBRICATION TYPES





## **Oil Cross-reference Chart**

ISO Viscosity	Oil Type	Ambient Temperature Range	Mobil	Shell	Castrol	<b>E</b>	<b>KLÜBER</b> LUBRICATION
	MIN-EP	0 to 25°C (32 to 77°F)	Mobilgear 600XP150	Omala S2 G 150	Alpha SP150	Renolin EP150	Klüberoil GEM 1-150N
	PAO-EP	-30 to 25 °C (-22 to 77 °F)	Mobil SHC Gear 150	Omala S4 GX 150	Alphasyn EP150	Gearmaster SYN150/NA	Klübersynth EG 4-150
	PAO	-30 to 25°C (-22 to 77°F)	Mobil SHC629	Morlina S4 B 150	Alphasyn T150	N/A	Klübersynth GEM 4-150N
VG150	PG	-25 to 25°C (-13 to 77°F)	Mobil Glygoyle 150	Omala S4 WE 150	Alphasyn PG150	Renolin PG150	Klübersynth GH 6-150
	FG	0 to 25°C (32 to 77°F)	Mobil DTE FM 150	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	FG-PAO	-15 to 25°C (5 to 77°F)	Mobil SHC Cibus 150	N/A	N/A	Cassida GL150	Klüberoil 4 UH 1-150N
	FG-PG	-25 to 25°C (-13 to 77°F)	Mobil Glygoyle 150	N/A	N/A	N/A	Klübersynth UH1 6-150
	MIN-EP	0 to 40°C (32 to 104°)	Mobilgear 600XP220	Omala S2 G 220	Alpha SP220	Renolin EP220	Klüberoil GEM 1-220N
•	PAO-EP	-30 to 60 °C (-22 to 140 °F)	Mobil SHC Gear 220	Omala S4 GX 220	Alphasyn EP220	Gearmaster SYN220/NA	Klübersynth EG 4-220
	PAO	-30 to 60°C (-22 to 140°F)	Mobil SHC630	Morlina S4 B 220	Alphasyn T220	N/A	Klübersynth GEM 4-220N
VG220	PG	-25 to 60°C (-13 to 140°F)	Mobil Glygoyle 220	Omala S4 WE 220	Alphasyn PG220	Renolin PG220	Klübersynth GH 6-220
	FG	0 to 40°C (32 to 104°F)	Mobil DTE FM 220	N/A	N/A	Fuchs FM220	N/A
	FG-PAO	-25 to 60°C (-13 to 140°F)	Mobil SHC Cibus 220	N/A	N/A	Cassida GL220	Klüberoil 4 UH 1-220N
	FG-PG	-25 to 60°C (-13 to 140°F)	Mobil Glygoyle 220	N/A	N/A	Cassida WG220	Klübersynth UH1 6-220
	MIN-EP	0 to 40°C (32 to 104°F)	Mobilgear 600XP460	Omala S2 G 460	Alpha SP460	Renolin EP460	Klüberoil GEM 1-460N
	PAO-EP	-20 to 80°C (-4 to 176°F)	Mobil SHC Gear 460	Omala S4 GX 460	Alphasyn EP460	Gearmaster SYN460/NA	Klübersynth EG 4-460
	PAO	-20 to 80°C (-4 to 176°F)	Mobil SHC 634	Morlina S4 B 460	Alphasyn T460	N/A	Klübersynth GEM 4-460N
VG460	PG	-20 to 80°C (-4 to 176°F)	Mobil Glygoyle 460	Omala S4 WE 60	Alphasyn PG460	N/A	Klübersynth GH 6-460
	FG	0 to 40°C (32 to 104°F)	Mobil DTE FM460	N/A	N/A	Fuchs FM460	N/A
	FG-PAO	-20 to 80°C (-4 to 176°F)	Mobil SHC Cibus 460	N/A	N/A	Cassida GL460	Klüberoil 4 UH 1-460N
	FG-PG	-20 to 80°C (-4 to 176°F)	Mobil Glygoyle 460	N/A	N/A	Cassida WG460	Klübersynth UH1 6-460

Low-end service temperature limit may vary for a specific lubricant; Please also see the important notes on Page 1.



1

# HELICAL IN-LINE FLANGED OIL FILL QUANTITIES



## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

## Helical In-line flanged lubrication

The following NORD Gear reducers are shipped from the factory with a pre-determined oil fill level in accordance to the specified reducer size and mounting position. For additional information, please refer to the "Oil Plug & Vent Locations" documentation for your gear unit.

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Actual oil volume can vary slightly depending upon the gear case size, mounting and ratio. Prior to commissioning the reducer, check the oil-fill level using the reducer's oil level plug and drain or add addition oil as needed. The minimum acceptable oil level is 0.15 in (4mm) below the oil level hole.

For mounting orientations other than shown please consult NORD Gear. Reducer modifications may be required.



Туре	IV	11	M	12	M	13	Μ	14	M	15	M	16
	Quarts	Liters										
SK02F	0.26	0.25	0.74	0.70	0.74	0.70	0.74	0.70	0.53	0.50	0.53	0.50
SK 03 F	0.58	0.55	1.00	0.95	0.95	0.90	1.27	1.20	0.95	0.90	0.95	0.90
SK11E F	0.32	0.30	0.53	0.50	0.53	0.50	0.48	0.45	0.42	0.40	0.42	0.40
SK12F	0.37	0.35	0.90	0.85	0.95	0.90	0.95	0.90	0.74	0.70	0.74	0.70
SK 13 F	1.06	1.00	1.37	1.30	1.37	1.30	1.27	1.20	1.06	1.00	1.06	1.00
SK21E F	0.53	0.50	1.27	1.20	1.37	1.30	0.63	0.60	0.95	0.90	0.95	0.90
SK22F	0.74	0.70	1.90	1.80	1.90	1.80	1.90	1.80	1.48	1.40	1.48	1.40
SK 23 F	1.48	1.40	2.75	2.60	2.43	2.30	2.96	2.80	2.96	2.80	2.96	2.80
SK31E F	0.95	0.90	1.90	1.80	1.74	1.65	1.37	1.30	1.32	1.25	1.32	1.25
SK32F	1.27	1.20	2.96	2.80	3.28	3.10	3.28	3.10	2.32	2.20	2.32	2.20
SK 33N F	2.32	2.20	3.17	3.00	3.59	3.40	4.44	4.20	2.43	2.30	2.43	2.30
SK41E F	1.27	1.20	2.43	2.30	2.85	2.70	2.11	2.00	2.01	1.90	2.01	1.90
SK42F	1.90	1.80	4.65	4.40	4.76	4.50	4.23	4.00	3.91	3.70	3.91	3.70
SK 43 F	3.70	3.50	6.02	5.70	5.28	5.00	6.45	6.10	4.33	4.10	4.33	4.10
SK51E F	1.90	1.80	3.70	3.50	4.33	4.10	3.17	3.00	4.02	3.80	4.02	3.80
SK52F	3.17	3.00	7.19	6.80	6.55	6.20	7.82	7.40	5.92	5.60	5.92	5.60
SK 53 F	5.49	5.20	8.88	8.40	7.40	7.00	9.40	8.90	7.08	6.70	7.08	6.70
SK 62 F	7.40	7.00	15.9	15.0	14.8	14.0	19.5	18.5	16.9	16.0	16.9	16.0
SK 63 F	14.3	13.5	14.8	14.0	16.4	15.5	19.0	18.0	14.8	14.0	14.8	14.0
SK 72 F	10.6	10.0	24.3	23.0	19.5	18.5	29.6	28.0	24.3	23.0	24.3	23.0
SK 73 F	23.2	22.0	23.8	22.5	24.3	23.0	29.1	27.5	21.1	20.0	21.1	20.0
SK 82 F	15.9	15.0	39.1	37.0	30.6	29.0	47.6	45.0	36.5	34.5	36.5	34.5
SK 83 F	32.8	31.0	35.9	34.0	37.0	35.0	42.3	40.0	35.9	34.0	35.9	34.0
SK 92 F	27.5	26.0	77.0	73.0	49.7	47.0	82.0	78.0	55.0	52.0	55.0	52.0
SK 93 F	56.0	53.0	74.0	70.0	62.0	59.0	78.0	74.0	52.0	49.0	52.0	49.0
SK 102 F	42.3	40.0	86.0	81.0	70.0	66.0	110	104	76.0	72.0	76.0	72.0
SK 103 F	73.0	69.0	82.0	78.0	82.0	78.0	105	99.0	71.0	67.0	71.0	67.0



## HELICAL IN-LINE OIL PLUG & VENT LOCATIONS



## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## **Oil plug connections**

Prior to commissioning the reducer, check the oil-fill level using the reducer's oil-level plug and drain or add additional oil as needed. The minimum acceptable oil level is 0.15 in (4mm) below the oil level hole. *For mounting orientations other than shown please consult NORD Gear. New plug locations may be required.* 



\* Oil level for 3 stage gear units.

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

**NORD Gear Corporation** Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673



TROUBLESHOOTING



## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

## Troubleshooting

This section identifies some of the most common issues involved with NORD Gear speed reducers, and provides recommendations to assist you in defining and answering your questions as you work with our products. You may also contact our Engineering/Application departments if your questions are not answered in the table below.

Problem With t	he Reducer	Possible Causes	Suggested Remedy
	Overloading	Load exceeds the capacity of the reducer	Check rated capacity of reducer, replace with unit of sufficient capacity or reduce the load.
Runs Hot		Insufficient lubrication	Check lubricant level and adjust up to recommended levels
	Improper lubrication	Excessive lubrication	Check lubricant level and adjust down to recommended levels.
		Wrong lubrication	Flush out and refill with correct lubricant as recommended
	Loose foundation bolts	Weak mounting structure	Inspect mounting of reducer. Tighten loose bolts and/or reinforce mounting and structure.
		Loose hold down bolts	Tighten bolts
Runs Noisy	Failure of bearings	May be due to lack of lubricant	Replace bearing. Clean and flush reducer and fill with recommended lubricant.
		Overload	Check rated capacity of reducer.
	Insufficient lubricant	Level of lubricant in reducer not properly maintained.	Check lubricant level and adjust to factory recommended level.
		Overloading of reducer can cause damage	Replace broken parts. Check rated capacity of reducer.
Output shaft does not turn	Internal parts are broken or missing	Key missing or sheared off on input shaft.	Replace key.
		Coupling loose or disconnected	Properly allign reducer and coupling. Tighten coupling.
	Worn seals	Caused by dirt or grit entering seal.	Replace seals. Autovent may be clogged. Replace or clean.
Oil Leakage	Unit runs bot or looks	Overfilled reducer	Check lubricant level and adjust to recommended level.
	Unit runs not or leaks	Vent clogged.	Clean or replace, being sure to prevent any dirt from falling into the reducer.
	Incorrect fill level	Improper mounting position, such as wall or ceiling mount of horizontal reducer.	Check mounting position on the name tag & verify with mounting chart in manual.





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 1. Overview

This user manual applies to NORD Motor products and it provides general information for motor operation, installation, maintenance, inspection, repair, and trouble shooting, which is relevant to most of the motor products shipped by NORD. Information and instructions provided in this manual, safety and commissioning information and all other manuals applicable to any items supplied by NORD must be observed.

This instruction manual is not intended to include comprehensive details and information related to all possible design variations or accessories options available with NORD motors. If there is any uncertainty about specific procedures, instructions or motor details, then please refer these questions to NORD for additional information or clarification.

Before installing, operating, or performing maintenance on any electrical motor become familiar with the following:

- The detailed operating instructions and wiring diagrams.
- All applicable national, local and system-specific regulations, codes and practices.
- The national / regional regulations governing safety and accident prevention.
- The proper use of any tools, transportation or hoisting equipment, and safety equipment needed to complete the installation.
- To avoid serious injury or possible damage to the equipment or machine, compliance with all safety and information notes is mandatory!



À

## WARNING

All work involved in the transport, connection, commissioning and maintenance of any NORD product must be carried out by qualified and responsible technicians. All applicable national, regional, and local work regulations and safety requirements must also be complied with. NORD assumes no liability for personal injury, accidental death, or equipment damage and malfunctions resulting from failure to comply with installation or operating instructions, safety notes, or any work regulations and laws!

## DANGER

To avoid electrocution, injury or death, make certain the motor is properly grounded, completely de-energized and brought to a no-voltage condition prior to working on any electrical connections.

## 2. Motor Types

NORD AC electric induction motors described in this manual generally include the following types:

- Single speed or two-speed design.
- Three phase alternating current or single phase design.
- Enclosure types: TEFC, TENV, and TEBC.

## 3. Enclosure Types

## Totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC).

TEFC motor designs rely on fan that is mounted on the motor's rotor shaft so the cooling capacity can vary based upon the motor's operating speed.

## Totally enclosed, non-ventilated (TENV)

The TENV motor designs rely purely on convection cooling and they have no fan. Often TENV designs are labeled for intermittent or periodic duty or at a lower power rating than is typical for the given motor frame size.

## Totally enclosed, blower cooled (TEBC)

The TEBC design uses separate blower or ventilator fan, with its own low wattage motor and a separate power supply, to provide continuous airflow and cooling. The blower can be used to extend the speed range of the motor and allow extreme slow speed operation without causing a concern for overheating. Blower data is provided in Table 6, page 11.

## 4. Voltage and Frequency Variation

Voltage and frequency variations are based upon the assumption that the nameplate horsepower will not be exceeded and that the motor temperature may increase. Standard allowable deviations are based upon the type of motor labeling.

## **NEMA and CSA Labeled Motors**

Variations are based upon the nominal utilization voltage, and not the service (supply) voltage as per ANSI C84.1.

Service Voltages	Utilization Voltages
120V, 208V, 240V, 480V, 600V	115V, 200V, 230V, 460V, 575V

- Voltage variation at rated frequency = ±10%.
- Frequency variations at rated voltage = ±5%.
- Combined voltage/frequency variation = ±5%.

## **CE Labeled Motors**

Per IEC 60038, allowable service voltage variations on in the current system, compared to the previous system, are as indicated.

Previous Service Voltages	Current Service Voltages
220V, 380V, 660V	230V, 400V, 690V +6/-10%
240V, 415V	230V, 400V +10/-6%

- Per EN 60034-1 a ±5% voltage variation and a ±2% frequency variation can be tolerated.
- The allowed variations are based upon the voltage (or voltage range) indicated on the motor nameplate.

## **NORD Gear Corporation**

Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

**NORD Gear Limited** 





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 5. Motor Nameplate Information

The motor nameplate and the display of technical information may vary slightly depending upon the global standard/s that the motor conforms to and the efficiency level. Please reference the examples below.







## Table 1. Nameplate Data

Field	Definition
0	Model / Type
2	Number of Phases
3	Order Number
4	Serial Number
5	Insulation Class
6	IP (Ingress Protection) Enclosure Rating
0	Duty Cycle
8	Ambient Temperature Rating (°C)
9	Enclosure Type
0	Motor Frequency (Hz)
0	Voltage Rating (V)
12	Current Rating (A)
ß	Rated Power (HP or kW)

www	v.nc	ord.c	om	<b>9</b> E 19	1510 L	C. 112560		E	(	E	
	RD.	Mti	0								
**	2	No.	0								500-0
PH 🧲	3	SF	0	NEM	ЛA	DU.	TY		IP	O	0850
INS	)	EFF	0	(	% PF	0		1	FR	6	
$\cap$	Aľ	ИВ		۰	€NCL	9	1	DP C	ODE 🕻		5
$\cup$				13	) Hp			_	🚯 k\	N	<u>_</u>
		6	rpm	0	) Hz		. (	6 rpn	n (	<mark>Ю н</mark>	Iz
	(	0		V			. (	D	V		
	(	12			А		. (	2		A	
Brake	e (	24	Nm		<b>Ø</b>	VAC	6	6		VDC	

www	v.nc	ord.c	om	<b>9</b>	<b>U°</b> 1510 L	C: US R 112560		C	6	
Sal	RD	Mtr	0							
~		No.	8							501-0
PH	2	SF	19	NEM	ЛA	DUT	<b>(6</b> )	IP (	D	0650
INS	5	EFF	0	(	% PF	0		FR	6	
$\cap$	A١	ЛВ	•	°C	ENCL	9	DP	CODE 🔞		
$ \leq $				13	Нр			🚯 kW	$\sim$	_
		<u> </u>	rpm	0	Hz		🛛 🕕 rp	om (	D Hz	2
	(	0		V			0	V		
	(	12			Α		Ø		А	
Brake	e (	24	Nm		25	VAC	26		VDC	L,



Field	Definition
4	Power Factor
15	Motor Frame Size
16	Full Load Speed (rpm or 1/min <sup>2</sup> )
Ū	Efficiency
18	NEMA Code Letter
19	Service Factor
20	Current Rating (If Service Factor $\geq$ 1.15)
2	Operating Voltage Rage (A)
22	Current Rating at Operating Voltage Range (A)
23	Service Factor at Operating Voltage Range (A)
24	Brake Rating (Nm)
25	Brake Supply Voltage (VAC)
25	Brake Coil Voltage (VDC)

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

## NORD Gear Corporation





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 6. Motor Options And Nomenclature

NORD offers many options for its motors. The option code will be shown in the motor nomenclature. Below are commonly used options.

Code	Description	Code	Description
AICM	Additional Internal Insulation Coating Applied	OL	TENV Motor – Without Fan / With Cover
BRE	With Brake	OL/H	TENV Motor - Without Fan & Cover
EAR	Single Phase, Start Cap/Run Cap	Р	Premium Efficient Motors
ECR	Single Phase, Start Cap/Run Cap Increased SF	RD	Canopy Cover
EHB	Single Phase, Run Capacitor Only	RDD	Double Canopy Cover
EP	Epoxy Dipped Windings	RG	Brake – Corrosion Protected
F	Blower Cooling Fan - 3ph & 1ph	RLS	Backstop
FC	Blower Cooling Fan - 1ph	SH	Motor Space Heater
FHL	Brake – Lockable Manual Release	SR	Brake – Dust Protected
н	Energy Efficient	TF	Thermistor
HL	Brake – Manual Hand Release	TW	Thermostat
IG	Incremental Encoder	VN	10:1 Constant Torque Rated Motor
IP66	IP66 Environmental Protection	VR	5:1 Constant Torque Rated Motor
IR	Brake – Current Sensing Relay	VW	20:1 Constant Torque Rated Motor
КВ	Condensation Holes - Removable Plugs	VZ-F	1000+:1 Constant Torque Rated Motor
KD	Condensation Holes - Open	WE	2nd Motor Shaft End
MIK	Brake – Microswitch	WU	High Slip Rotor
MS	Power Plug Connector	Z	High Inertia Motor Fan



## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378



1

1

∕!∖

## MOTORS - AC INDUCTION, SINGLE & POLYPHASE

/!\



## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 7. Application Conditions

Standard NORD motors are designed to operate in dusty or moist environments and have anti-fungal, thermal class F insulation.

- Enclosure Protection Rating = IP55 (minimum).
- Maximum Installation Height = 3300 ft (1000 m).
- Ambient Temperature = -4 to 104°F (-20 to 40 °C).
- Tropical-proof, Thermal Class F insulation.

The protection level and maximum ambient temperature are stated on the motor nameplate.

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

NORD can provide motors for an expanded range of applications and service conditions including higher protection levels, extreme ambient conditions and, higher altitudes.

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

Consult NORD for recommendations if motors are operated under extreme loading conditions, exposed to high inertia loads, or need to operate under unusually high cycling conditions with high starting and stopping frequency.

Special design and assembly considerations are needed if NORD motors are subject to any of the following conditions. Environmental conditions may lead to premature damage and/or failure without the proper protective features. Consult NORD for design considerations:

DANGER

- Outdoor installation with motor in a vertical position.
- Direct contact with aggressive or corrosive materials (acids, bases, salts, certain gases, etc.).
- Exposure to extreme high or low temperatures, high relative humidity, condensation moisture or very wet environments.
- Subject to extreme material build-up on the unit (dirt, dust, sand, etc.).
- Hazardous Locations (risk of fire or explosion).

## 8. Transportation

During transportation observe the following:

- Make sure that all eyebolts and lifting lugs are tight and firmly against their supporting surface.
- Use all the lifting eyes that are intentionally supplied with the motor.
- Lift only at designed points.
- Protect the mounting surface from possible damage during transportation.
- Always use sufficiently rated handling equipment, lift mechanisms and lifting straps.
- With heavier objects or unbalanced loads, it may be appropriate to use more than one lifting point or an additional strap or sling to assure safe transportation of the assembly. This is especially true of assembled gearmotors and motorized reducers.
- Once the NORD motor or assembly is properly installed, remove the transportation fixtures completely or make certain they are properly re-secured and tightened.

## WARNING

## **Transportation – Use of Lifting Devices**

To avoid death, serious injury or equipment damage...

- Hoisting lugs or lifting eyes attached to the motor are designed for the weight of the motor only! Do not attach any additional loads!
- The motor must only be transported and lifted using the lifting eyes, in a position that is appropriate for its type of construction. Otherwise, it could fall over or slip in the lifting tackle.
- During suspended transport, two straps must be able to carry the entire load weight safely.
- When required use additional, suitable means of support for transportation, installation or removal.
- Always secure the support equipment to prevent it from slipping.





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 9. Storage

If the motor is not in service, store it according to the following conditions:

- Store the motor in a clean, dry, dirt-free, vibration free area.
- Storage temperatures of 10°C (50°F) to 50°C (120°F) must be maintained.
- Relative humidity must not exceed 60%.
- If vibration in the area exceeds 0.002 inch (0.05 mm) at 60 hertz, then vibration isolation pads are suggested to prevent brinelling of the bearings.
- Treat the unprotected shaft end and mating flange surfaces with a corrosion inhibitor that can be cleaned off prior to commissioning.
- Before placing the motor into service, visually inspect the motor exterior for evidence of deterioration during storage. Turn the motor shaft by hand to make sure the shaft turns freely.
- Motor space heaters, when provided, are to be connected and energized whenever there is a possibility that the storage ambient conditions will reach the dew point. Space heaters are optional. Remove motor from the storage container when the heater is energized.
- If the motor needs to be stored for extended periods, or if it is stored in less than favorable conditions, it is recommend that the winding insulation resistance be checked prior to commissioning (page 7).
- Even if stored in favorable conditions, the antifriction motor bearings and motor shaft seals may need to be replaced if the storage period is more than 4 years.

## **10. Safety Considerations**

When installing, servicing or replacing electric motors it is important to be working in a "voltage-free" state. Observe the following safety rules.

## Safety Rules

- 1. Disconnect the system. Disconnect the auxiliary circuits (brakes, space heaters, etc.).
- 2. Prevent reconnection (follow safe lock-out/tag-out practices).
- 3. Make sure that the equipment is at zero voltage.
- 4. Make certain the equipment is properly grounded and short-circuited.
- 5. Cover or isolate nearby components that are still electrically live.

To energize the system, apply the measures in reverse order.

### **Qualified Personnel**

All work involved in the transport, connection, commissioning and maintenance of any NORD product must be carried out by qualified and responsible technicians.

For the purpose of this documentation, a qualified personnel is taken to mean a person or people who fulfill the following requirements:

- Through appropriate training and experience, they are able to recognize and avoid risks and potential dangers in their particular field of activity.
- They have been instructed to carry out work on the machine by the appropriate person responsible.
- They are responsible for knowing and complying with all applicable national, regional, and local work regulations and safety requirements.



À

Æ

À

À

A

## MOTORS - AC INDUCTION, SINGLE & POLYPHASE

## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

Æ

A



## 10. Safety Considerations Ctd.

## **General Warnings and Cautions**

## DANGER

To avoid electrocution, injury or death, make certain all electrical devices (motors, brakes, variable frequency drives, etc.) are properly grounded, completely de-energized, and brought to a no-voltage condition prior to working on any electrical connections. Remember that most of these devices carry potentially dangerous energy levels for a period of time after power is removed. Always follow proper lock-out/tag-out procedures.

## DANGER

Electrical machines contain dangerous voltage levels, electrically live parts, rotating surfaces and hot surfaces. To prevent injury, death or possible equipment damage always observe the following:

- Keep all safety covers and guards in place during operation. Remove and replace covers in compliance with the applicable safety regulations.
- Allow the machine to cool down before starting any work on it.
- Operate the machines properly.
- Perform regular maintenance on the machine.
- Secure and guard free-standing shaft extensions.

## DANGER

## **Electrically Live Parts**

Electrical machines contain electrically live parts. Fatal or severe injuries and substantial material damage can occur if the required covers are removed or if the machines are not handled, operated, or maintained properly.

## WARNING

## **Rotating Parts**

Electrical machines contain dangerous rotating parts. Fatal or severe injuries and substantial material damage can occur if the required covers are removed or if the machines are not handled, operated, or maintained properly.

## WARNING

### Hot Surfaces

Electrical machines have hot surfaces. Fatal or severe injuries and substantial material damage can occur if the required covers are removed or if the machines are not handled, operated, or maintained properly. Allow the machine to cool down before starting any work on it.

## WARNING

## **Maintain Proper Cooling**

Operating the motor without the intended cooling fan may cause overheating and result in very hot surfaces, personal injury and material damage. Never commission a motor intended to be fan cooled when it is missing the shaft-driven fan or external blower assembly.

## DANGER

### **Condensation Drain Holes (Optional)**

Inserting objects into the condensation drain holes can damage the winding and can result in death, serious injury and damage to property!

- Before opening sealed drain holes, make sure the motor is in a no-voltage condition. Close the condensation drain holes before re-commissioning.
- Exercise caution around drain holes that are intended to be left open, especially when the motor is energized.

## 1

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Before start-up check the following:

- All electrical connections are secure, well grounded and properly made.
- The motor is rotating in the correct direction (when de-coupled from the driven load).
- There are no temperature-sensitive parts (cables etc.), in contact with motor enclosure.
- Condensation drain holes are always located at the lowest point of the motor.

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

01.31.17

**NORD Gear Corporation** Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## **11.** Checking the Insulation

Before putting the motor into operation for the first time, after a lengthy period of storage or standstill (approx. 6 months), the insulation resistance of the winding should be checked.

## WARNING

During or directly after measurement the motor connection terminals carry hazardous voltages. Fatal or severe injuries and substantial material damage can occur if the required covers are removed or if the machines are not handled, operated, or maintained properly.

## A. Control

Æ

The insulation resistance of new, cleaned, or repaired motor windings against the grounded housing and against one another should be > 200 Mega-Ohms.

### **B.** Measurement

Using a Mega-Ohm meter apply a DC voltage of 500 VDC to the motor winding for a period of 60 seconds and record the winding insulation resistance compared to ground.

- The 500 VDC test voltage is applicable to low voltage motors up to 1000 VAC.
- When performing this test the temperature of the windings should be 25°C ± 15°C (77°F ± 27°F).

## C. Verification

- If the insulation resistance of the winding is less than 50 Mega-Ohms, the cause may be moisture. The windings should be dried and the test should be repeated.
- After any lengthy period of operation the insulation resistance may drop. So long as the measured value does not fall below the critical value of 50 Mega-Ohm, the motor may continue to be operated.
- If the measured value falls below the critical 50 Mega-Ohm level, the cause must be established and the windings or winding sections must be cleaned, dried, repaired, or replaced as needed.

## 12. Bearing Lubrication

NORD motor frame sizes 63 up to and including 225 are normally supplied with internally grease lubricated bearings and require no lubrication during normal operation.

NORD motor frame sizes 250 and larger are supplied with grease fittings for re-greasing the motor bearings.

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Motors with grease fittings are normally supplied with a label indicating the grease type used, the suggested relubrication interval, and the amount of new grease to be applied. General bearing maintence guidelines are listed in Table 3.

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

01.31.17

1

Typical motor bearing grease is an NLGI No. 2 consistency, high grade product with a polyurea base thickener, synthetic or blended mineral/synthetic oil, and stabilizing agents to protect against heat and oxidation.

### Table 3 – Motor Bearing Maintence Guidelines

Frame Size	Power	Poles	<b>Re-greasing Interval</b>
63-225	0.16-60 HP (0.12-45 kW)	All	Maintence Free
250 to 280	75-125 HP	2	4000 h
250 to 280	(55-75 kW)	4 to 8	8000 h
215	150-250 HP	2	3000 h
515	(132-200 kW)	4 to 8	6000 h

STOP NOTICE

When re-greasing motor bearings do not to mix different greases without verifying the compatibility with a reputable grease lubrication supplier. Mixing incompatible products can lead to bearing failure.

## 13. Mechanical Installation

Integral motors, NEMA C-face motors, and IEC flange mounted motors must be rigidly secured to their mating connection surface using all fastening screws tightened to the proper bolt torque. It is good practice to apply a medium strength thread-locking agent (Loctite® 242) to the mounting screws.

Foot mounted motors must be securely installed to a rigid and level foundation or mounting surface to minimize vibration and maintain alignment between the motor and shaft load. All mounting hole locations must be utilized. Tighten all hold down screws or bolts to the proper bolt torque.



Failure to provide a proper mounting surface may cause vibration, misalignment and bearing damage.

Accurate alignment and proper balancing of output devices (couplings, belts, pulleys, etc.) is required to assure quite, low vibration, trouble free operation. When the motor is directly coupled to a gear drive or a driven machine make sure that the motor shaft and driven machine shaft are aligned with one another axially.

## NOTICE

Inaccurate alignment may lead to bearing damage, excessive vibrations and shaft breakage.

## IMPORTANT NOTE

For motor replacement guidelines see section 20 on page 15 and section 21 on page 16.

## NORD Gear Corporation

Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

1





## 14. Electrical Connections

## DANGER

To avoid electrocution, injury or death, make certain all electrical devices (motors, brakes, variable frequency drives, etc.) are properly grounded, completely de-energized, and brought to a no-voltage condition prior to working on any electrical connections. Remember that most of these devices potentially dangerous energy levels for a period of time after power is removed. Always follow proper lock-out/tag-out procedures.

## 1

/!\

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

External motor brakes have their own connection requirements as indicated in the appropriate brake instruction manuals.



## WARNING

If the motor has an integral brake, make certain there is no load connected to the driven equipment before releasing the brake. Otherwise serious injury, death, or damage to the equipment may result.

- The supply voltage and frequency must agree with the motor nameplate data.
- Always feed the connecting leads into the terminal box using appropriate mating cable glands. The mating connection cables and cable glands should be suitable for temperatures ≥ 194°F (90°C).
- Provide the ends of the connecting leads and ground lead with cable lugs or curved ring eyelets before connecting them to the terminal board.
- Make certain that the wiring connections and arrangement of the terminal board jumpers conform to the appropriate wiring diagram as provided in the motor terminal box and/or page 9 of this manual.

• Tighten the terminal board screw connections on the on the main terminal board per the table below.

Table 4 – Tightening Torque:

Terminal Board and Grounding Screws						
Thread Size	Nut Size Tightening Torque					
	[mm]	[lb-ft]	[Nm]			
M4	7	0.6-0.9	0.8-1.2			
M5	8	1.3-1.8	1.8-2.5			
M6	10	2.0-3.0	2.7-4			
M8	13	4.0-5.9	5.5-8			
M10	17	6.6-9.6	9-13			
M12	19	11.8-14.8	16-20			

• Upon final assembly, the terminal box cover must be sealed so that it is dust-tight and water-tight.

Table 5 – Tightening Torque: Terminal Box Cover Screws

Thread Size	Tightening Torque		
	[lb-ft]	[Nm]	
M4	0.6-0.9	0.8-1.2	
M5	0.9-1.3	1.2-1.8	
M6	1.1-1.8	1.5-2.5	
M8	2.2-3.7	3.0-5.0	

## **15. Direction of Rotation**

The motor shaft rotation is defined per IEC 600034, Part 8. The motor shaft rotation can be controlled by the way the incoming line power is connected. When connecting the incoming line power in phase order to the terminal block posts, T1 (U1), T2 (V1), and T3 (W1) respectively, the motor shaft rotation will be clockwise when viewing the motor shaft at the drive-end.





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 15. Wiring Diagrams - Motor & Motor Option Connection Diagrams



## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

**NORD Gear Corporation** Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

www.nord.com/docs





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE ·

## 17. Inspection

 $\wedge$ 

Inspect the motor after every 500 operating hours. Please use table 12 below for inspection guidelines.

## CAUTION

If it is necessary to clean the motor exterior, do not use shop air. Shop air can force contaminents into the motor and may cause parts damage or result in blowing debris causing injury.

Inspect	Check	Action
Motor Exterior	Check the external surfaces for contamination. Accumulation of dirt and fibrous deposits must be removed.	Clean the motor external surfaces using clean, lint-free cloths.
		Clean deposits from between cooling fins using a vacuum cleaner and a stiff-bristled nylon brush.
	Check the external surfaces for oil film and greasy deposits.	Clean the oil film and greasy deposits from the motor surface using clean, lint-free cloths.
		If necessary, moisten the cloth with an approved non-flammable, residue-free solvent. Do not pour solvent on the motor.
	Check for evidence of damage or overheating.	If the motor has physical damage, replace the motor.
Motor Mountings	Make sure the mounting hardware is secure.	If the mounting hardware is not secure, check the motor/gearbox alignment, and tighten the mounting hardware.
Motor Electrical	Check that all electrical connections are secure.	If the electrical connections are not secure, tighten them.
Connections	Check the electrical connections for evidence of arcing.	Loose electrical connections can cause arcing, which is evident by discoloration and charring. If you find evidence of arcing, replace the damaged connections.
Insulation Resistance	Using an ohmmeter, check and record the resistance of motor winding insulation.	Compare the current resistance reading to previous readings. If the resistance drops significantly, perform an internal inspection for insulation damage or deterioration.
Motor Brake	On motors that have a brake, use a feeler gauge to check the air gap in between the brake pad and the rotor according to the appropriate user manual.	If the air gap exceeds the maximum allowed for that brake configuration provided in the manual, adjust the air gap or replace the brake pad according to user manual U35000.

## Table12. - Motor Inspection Guidelines



- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -





Part Number	Part Description	<b>Qty per Assembly</b>
6	Input Pinion	1
900	Rotor Assembly	1
902	A-Endbell	1
902-1	Screw	4
902-2	Dubo Seal	4
904	Oil Seal	1
905	Bearing	1
906	Preload Spring	1
907	Terminal Box Frame	1
907-1	Screw	4
908	Terminal Box Cover	1
908-1	Screw	4
909	Gasket - Terminal Box Frame	1
910	Gasket - Terminal Box Cover	1
916	Stator	1
918	Кеу	1
919	Retaining Ring 1	
920	Oil Plug	1

Part Number	Part Description	Qty per Assembly	
921	Gasket	1	
923	Screw	4	
929	Bearing	1	
932	B-Endbell	1	
932-1	Screw	4	
933	Oil Seal	1	
939	Fan	1	
940	Fan Cover	1	
940-1	Screw	4	
947	Retaining Ring	1	
948	Retaining Ring	1	
952	Fan Clip	1	
960	NPT Thread Adapter	1	
961	Plug (includes O-ring) 1		
TBLK	Terminal Block 1		
TBLK-1	Screw, Terminal Block Mounting	2	
	Jumper Bar (not illustrated)	AR	

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

01.31.17







## 19. Repair

Reference the parts list drawing on page 14 for clarification.

- A. Disassemble the motor according to the general exploded view in PARTS INFORMATION. Disassemble only as far as necessary to replace the failed parts.
- B. Whenever the motor is disassembled, clean all dust and contamination from the motor interior using a vacuum cleaner and a soft-bristled nylon brush.
- C. The following parts must be replaced if they are removed:
  - Oil seal (904), Oil seal (933)
  - Gasket (909), Gasket (910), Gasket (921)
  - Gasket on plug (961)
  - Self-locking screws (907-1, 908-1, 923, 932-1, 940-1)
  - Dubo Seals (902-2)
- D. If the following parts are removed, inspect them, and replace them if they are deformed or damaged:
  - Retaining ring (919), Retaining ring (947), Retaining ring (948)
  - Fan clip (952)

## 20. Removing and Replacing Integral Motors

Reference the parts list on Page 14 for clarification.

- A. Disconnect the power to the electric motor. Make certain the motor is properly grounded, de-energized and secured with a lock-out/tag-out device.
- B. Drain the oil from the mating gearbox, or rotate the motor/gearbox assembly so that the motor is up, to prevent oil from spilling from the gearbox when the motor is removed.
- C. Support the motor and prepare it for removal. Steady the motor and support it. For larger motors, use of mechanical lifting or support devices to may be appropriate.
- D. Remove the fastening screws that hold the motor to the reducer input.

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

Most integral motor installations have mounting bolts accessible from the motor exterior. If the bolts are not clearly visible, unbolt the input flange from the gearbox. Remove the bolts securing the motor to the reducer input flange, and discard the old DUBO sealing rings that were under the screw heads.

E. Maintain motor shaft alignment and move the motor directly away from its mounting surface until the motor shaft and mating input gear clear both the internal gear mesh and reducer input.

- F. Remove and discard the old flange gasket.
- G. Clean the gasket faces on the motor and gearbox, making sure no cleaning debris enters the gearbox.
- H. Check the replacement motor to make sure the motor flange, motor shaft, and motor pinion are identical to the motor that was removed.
- I. Place a new gasket between the gearbox and new motor.
- J. Position the motor on the gearbox, making sure the input pinion meshes with the input gear. Rotate the motor as necessary to align the bolt holes and seat the motor flange. Make sure the gasket remains properly aligned and seated
- K. Apply a medium strength thread locking compound to the bolt threads. Install the bolts and tighten them to the appropriate torque.

## **1**

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

If the motor/gearbox installation uses an input flange, first mount the input flange to the motor using the four mounting bolts and NEW DUBO sealing rings under the head of each fastening screw. Make sure the fastening screws are clean and apply new thread sealant if necessary.

L. Check the gearbox oil level in accordance with the appropriate User Manual/s. If necessary fill or add oil to the gearbox.

## NOTICE

Do not mix oil types. Mixing oil types may lead to component damage and diminished performance. Consult NORD for assistance or reference oil type listed on gearbox tag.

- M. Re-establish the electrical connection to the motor.
- N. Observe the subsequent start-up closely to make certain the equipment is operating properly and there are no seal or gasket leaks.

1



- U30000 - 17 of 18

## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE

## 21. Removing and Replacing NEMA C-Face or IEC Fange-Mounted Motors

For further clarification of these instructions, reference the parts list on Page 14 of this manual.

- A. Disconnect the power to the electric motor. Make certain the motor is properly grounded, de-energized and secured with a lock-out/tag-out device.
- B. Support the motor and prepare it for removal. Steady the motor and support it. For larger motors, use of mechanical lifting or support devices to may be appropriate.
- C. Remove the fastening screws that hold the motor to the C-face or IEC mounting flange.
- D. Maintain motor shaft alignment, and move the motor directly away from its mounting surface until the motor shaft and mating coupling clear the mounting flange surface of the driven equipment.
- E. Measure and record the proper placement of the motor shaft coupling prior to removing it from the old motor.
- F. Make sure the new motor shaft, key and key slot are free of all nicks, burrs, and lubrication or grease.
- G. Install the new shaft key on the new motor. If the shaft key is not captured or if an open-ended key slot is utilized it is good practice to secure the key into the key slot with a medium strength thread locking agent or alternatively one may stake the key in place.
- H. Re-install the coupling on the new motor shaft, making sure the placement of the coupling is in the same location as it was on the old motor (See Step E).
- I. Clean all old gasket material, sealants, contamination, and corrosion from the flange surface on the driven equipment.
- J. If the motor is utilized in a wet or wash down environment apply a sealing gasket or gasket eliminating compound to the mating flange surface, as would seem most appropriate for the application.
- K. Support the new motor and mount it flush against the mating flange surface of the driven equipment.
- L. Apply a medium strength thread locking agent to the bolt threads.
- M. Install the bolts and tighten them to the appropriate torque.
- N. Re-establish the electrical connection to the motor.
- O. Observe the subsequent start-up closely to make certain the equipment is operating properly.

## 22. Testing



## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

NORD electric motors do not require periodic testing. However, if a motor is removed from its installation, NORD recommends that the motor be checked according to the following static and dynamic testing procedures before it is reinstalled. Finding a condition that will require future repair before the motor is reinstalled decreases the overall maintenance time.

This section provides general test information and functional checks for the types of motors covered by this manual. Read and understand the tests and checks before performing them on your motor.

Record and date all measurements taken.

If the motor fails any of the test procedures provided below, use the troubleshooting guide to determine the motor problem.

## **Static Testing**

- A. The motor can only be static tested if it is disconnected from the component it drives and securely mounted on a fixture or mounting plate. These tests are usually conducted when a motor has been removed for any reason other than failure
- B. Turn the motor shaft slowly by hand. Feel and listen for evidence of a failed bearing, which is indicated by a rough feel as the shaft rotates, and by noise.
- C. Check for smooth rotation, with no evidence of binding or catching. If the shaft does not rotate smoothly, or binds or catches, the bearings are worn or failing, lack lubrication, or are contaminated.
- D. Check the motor shaft for side play by applying pressure at right angles to the shaft in several places around the circumference. If the shaft moves perceptibly, the front bearing may be worn.

## **Dynamic Testing**

- A. Find the motor voltage and rated load current values as listed on the motor nameplate.
- B. Using a volt-ohmmeter, verify that the motor power supply is in the correct range.
- C. Run the motor with no load. As the motor is operating, listen for unusual motor noise and check for excessive vibration. Vibration and motor noise are indications of bearing contamination, lack of lubrication, damage, or failure.
- D. Use an ammeter to measure the no-load current. Record the no-load current for comparison with previous readings, and for reference during future testing.
- E. If the motor passes the no-load test, operate the motor at rated load and check and record the current.
- F. Check the motor operating temperature at rated load. If the motor operates at a higher than normal temperature, the motor may be damaged, overloaded or failing.

## NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

## **NORD Gear Corporation**





## - RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE -

## 23. Troubleshooting

Fault	Likely Cause	Corrective Action
Motor fails to start.	<ul> <li>Motor is mis-wired</li> <li>Brake is may not be releasing.</li> <li>Fan guard damaged and contacting fan.</li> <li>Motor protection device has tripped or does not switch</li> <li>1-Ph Capacitor or start switch has failed.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Verify and correct motor wiring.</li> <li>Troubleshoot brake per User Manual U35000.</li> <li>Replace damaged fan guard.</li> <li>Check motor protection device for correct setting and correct error.</li> <li>Discharge capacitor and use a volt-ohm meter to check the capacitor for an open circuit - replace if needed. Inspect switch and connections. Replace if contacts look burned or pitted.</li> </ul>
Fuses blow or motor protection faults immediately.	<ul> <li>Short circuit in line.</li> <li>Lines connected incorrectly.</li> <li>Fuse or circuit breaker tripped.</li> <li>Motor is overloaded or equipment jammed.</li> <li>Stator is shorted or went to ground.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Rectify short circuit.</li> <li>Check circuit diagram and make corrections.</li> <li>Replace fuse or circuit breaker.</li> <li>Make sure load is free. Verify motor amp draw compared to nameplate rating.</li> <li>A damaged or blown stator will show a burn mark. Stator must be repaired or replaced.</li> </ul>
Motor hums and has high current consumption	<ul> <li>Brake may not be releasing.</li> <li>Rotor may be rubbing stator.</li> <li>Defective or incorrect stator winding.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Troubleshoot brake per User Manual U35000.</li> <li>Send motor to a repair specialist.</li> </ul>
Severe speed loss under load or excessive acceleration time.	<ul> <li>Overload.</li> <li>Excessive voltage drop.</li> <li>Damaged or failing motor bearings.</li> <li>Damaged or worn gear unit.</li> <li>1-Ph Capacitor or start switch has failed.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Check load conditions and make certain system is unobstructed. Reduce load or consider a larger motor.</li> <li>Verify service voltage is within specification. Check if nearby equipment is affecting incoming power. Make sure connection harness and wiring is adequate.</li> <li>Replace motor bearings.</li> <li>Replace or repair damaged gear unit.</li> <li>See instructions under "Motor fails to start".</li> </ul>
Motor runs the incorrect direction.	Incorrect wiring.	<ul> <li>Rewire motor according to system schematic and/or switch two incoming motor phases.</li> </ul>
Motor heats up excessively or thermal overload protection trips	<ul> <li>Overload.</li> <li>Ambient temperature is too high.</li> <li>Inadequate cooling.</li> <li>Operation is outside the allowed duty cycle.</li> <li>Motor protection device may be defective.</li> <li>Excessive supply voltage.</li> <li>System short or damaged stator.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Make sure load is free. Verify motor amp draw compared to nameplate rating. Reduce load or consider a larger motor.</li> <li>Do not operate above the rated conditions.</li> <li>Correct cooling air supply. Open and clear cooling air passages. Retrofit with forced ventilator fan if needed.</li> <li>Adjust operating duty cycle or contact a specialist to select a suitable motor or drive.</li> <li>Replace motor protection device.</li> <li>Adapt motor supply voltage.</li> <li>Check for loose, cut or damaged wires. Check stator winding for defects or burn damage.</li> </ul>
Excessive Noise or Vibration	<ul> <li>Motor bearings contaminated or damaged.</li> <li>Excessive motor shaft end play.</li> <li>Misaligned or imbalanced load.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Test motor by itself. If bearings are bad noise may be heard or roughness detected. Replace bearings. Add lubrication if bearings have grease fittings.</li> <li>Check shaft endplay with motor and system power disconnected. If shaft movement is excessive replace motor shaft bearings.</li> <li>Check all mating shaft connections for proper alignment and correct all imbalanced load conditions.</li> </ul>
1 Ph Start Capacitor Failures	<ul> <li>Motor is not coming up to speed quickly enough.</li> <li>Motor is being cycled frequently</li> <li>Start switch is defective or damaged.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Verify motor size to load conditions. Motor should come up to speed in no more than 2-3 seconds.</li> <li>Verify duty cycle and consult specialist for recommendations.</li> <li>Replace start switch.</li> </ul>
1 Ph Run Capacitor Failures	<ul> <li>Possible power surge to motor caused by transient voltage or lightening.</li> <li>Excessive ambient temperature.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Install proper surge protection.</li> <li>Verify ambient conditions do not exceed nameplate value.</li> </ul>

### NORD Gear Limited Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

## NORD Gear Corporation



i

1

# nsdem TOUCH-UP KIT

- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE



## Items included in the touch-up kit

I. No Rinse Alodine® Touch-N-Prep pen.

II. Color matched sealer pen

## **IMPORTANT NOTE**

- Always wear Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), including gloves and safety glasses with side shields.
- When opening individual pens, pull safety caps straight out from pen. Do not twist or torque the cap to avoid damaging the applicator assembly.
- Do not use fingers to prime the applicator tip. Priming takes 15-30 seconds.
- Make sure the surface is clean and dry.

## IMPORTANT NOTE

- I. Metal temperature must be above 50° F
- II. Do not excessively use abrasive pad while removing surface oxidation. Oxidation only needs to be removed from areas with exposed aluminum.
- III. Use enough product to wet surface but avoid pooling.
- IV. Do not rinse or wipe Alodine coating before the product is allowed to dry.
- V. Allow to air dry or use a blow dryer. Do not use a heat gun. Maximum drying temperature is 140°F.
- VI. Dry color will appear opaque.

## Part I: Allodine<sup>®</sup> 871 Touch-N-Prep<sup>®</sup> Pen Instructions

Touch-N-Prep<sup>®</sup> pens are designed for easy and safe repair of clean, bare, or previously painted aluminum surfaces. It is a non-rinse, dry-in-place application that can be applied using the following steps:

## 1. Surface Preperation



Before applying the coating, the treated surface must be cleaned using the following process:

- If the scratch is more than 24 hours old use a moistened abrasive pad to remove oxides from the surface of the metal.
- Wipe substrate with a damp lint-free cloth to ensure complete removal of soils and dislodged oxides generated from the previous step.
- Allow Surface to dry before Touch-N-Prep<sup>®</sup> application.

## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378



To activate, hold the Touch-N-Prep<sup>®</sup> pen upright and pop off the cap. Do not twist or turn to remove the cap, since this may result in the pen leaking. Hold the pen tip down onto a clean surface to begin the flow of solution to the tip.

### 3. Application



Press the pen tip down on the surface until solution fills the pen tip. Apply the Alodine<sup>®</sup> 871<sup>™</sup> solution to the metal surface with firm, smooth, even strokes, covering all of the edges. Overlap each stroke and allow to dry.



Frequent short jabs to re wet the application rip are preferred to maintain constant coating weights and avoid over-wetting the felt tip.

## 4. Re-Application



Within 5 minutes of the first coat, apply a second coat at a 90° angle to the first coat with the same smooth, firm stroke.

## NORD Gear Corporation



# nsdee TOUCH-UP KIT



- RETAIN FOR FUTURE USE ·

5. Prepare the Pen for Storage



Always immediately replace the cap when not in use to avoid evaporation and contamination.

## 6. Drying



Allow the Alodine Touch-N-Prep® coating to air dry thoroughly.

## **Part II: Sealer Application**

1. Prime Applicator Tip



To activate, hold the pen upright and pop off the cap. Do not twist or turn to remove the cap, since this may result in the pen leaking. Hold the pen tip down onto a clean surface to begin the flow of solution to the tip.

## 2. Application



Press the pen tip down on the surface until solution fills the pen tip. Apply the sealer pen solution to the metal surface with firm, smooth, even strokes, covering all of the edges. Overlap each stroke and allow to dry.

## 3. Prepare the Pen for Storage



Always immediately replace the cap when not in use to avoid evaporation and contamination.

4. Drying



Allow the sealer pen coating to air dry thoroughly.

NORD Gear Limited

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

01.31.17



advised in writing thereof within two (2) days of the date of this Invoice.

# NORD GEAR CORPORATION



## - CONDITIONS OF SALE

### 1. CONTRACT

2. CONFIRMATION

3. PRICES

permits required

4. LIMITED WARRANTY

8. BUYER'S REFUSAL OF DELIVERY

Any contract between Nord Gear Corporation, hereinafter designated as Seller, and the Buyer is subject to the terms and conditions of sale hereinafter If Buyer refuses to accept delivery of any goods tendered for delivery, then Seller, without prejudice to Seller's other lawful remedies, may either set forth. Any deviation from such terms and conditions must be specifically set forth in writing and consented to by Seller. Accordingly, the Buyer store or cause such goods to be stored in a warehouse, for buver's account and at Buver's cost, risk and expense, or sell such goods (without notice) and Seller acknowledge and agree that the terms and conditions set forth below and on the face hereof shall govern Buyer's purchase of the to any purchases at public or private sale, and hold the Buyer liable for any difference between (a) the contract price of the goods, and (b) the price goods described on the face hereof and shall take precedence over and represents the final agreement between Buyer and Seller, notwithstanding at which goods are resold less the costs and expense of such resale including brokerage commissions, or restocking charges. any inconsistent, contradictory or other prior or further conditions contained in any oral or written request or purchase order issued by Buyer or 9. GOODŠ IN TRANSIT If prior to delivery or while the goods are in transit, Buyer or Seller becomes bankrupt or insolvent, or any petition in bankruptcy or for the reorganizaany other document furnished by Buyer in connection with its purchase of the Goods, regardless of whether such document or documents are exchanged simultaneously with this Invoice or prior or subsequent thereto. Any additional or different terms or conditions which may appear in

tion or for a state court receivership is filed against Buyer or Seller, as the case may be, then the other party hereto may forthwith terminate this contract by giving written notice of such termination. Such termination shall not affect any claim for damages available to the Buyer, provided that if Buyer is then indebted to Seller, the amount of any such damage claim shall be abated to the extent that the indebtedness of Buyer to Seller, as actually paid in money, is abated by any order of judgement entered or any plan adopted in any bankruptcy, reorganization, receivership, or similar proceeding. Such termination shall not prejudice the Seller's rights to any amounts then due under the contract. If Buyer becomes bankrupt or insolvent or any petition in bankruptcy or for reorganizing or if a state court receivership is filed against Buyer, then, at its option Seller may take possession of any goods theretofore sold to Buyer, in connection with which the full purchase price has not been paid, analogous to the terms and provisions set forth in Paragraphs 11 and 12 hereinafter.

### 10. DELIVERY

(a) Any indicated dates of delivery are approximate only, but NORD Gear will attempt to meet them whenever possible. (b) NORD Gear will not be liable for any penalty clausess contained in any specifications or order submitted unless agreed to in writing by an authorized officer of NORD Gear Corporation. (c) Unless otherwise agreed, delivery of the goods to any carrier shall constitute delivery to the Buyer, and thereafter the risk of loss or damage to the goods shall be upon the Buyer. (d) If the Buyer does not give delivery instructions to the Seller at least (10) days prior to the delivery date ex factory confirmed by the Seller, the Seller may deliver the goods to a carrier of its own choosing, at Buyer's cost and risk, or, at Seller's option, may store the goods on the pier or any warehouse, at Buyer's cost and risk. Any purchase price in such event becomes due and payable within ten (10) days of such storage.

### 11. PAYMENT OF PURCHASE PRICE

Time of payment is of the essence under the contract. Unless otherwise provided, terms of payment are 30 days net from the date of invoice with a 1% discount if paid within 10 days of date of invoice. Upon default in any of the terms of the contract, or failure to comply with any of the conditions thereof, or upon seizure of the property under execution or other legal process, or if the Buyer becomes bankrupt or insolvent, or any petition for reorganization or for a state court receivership is filed against Buyer, or if the Buyer makes any assignment for the benefit of it's creditors or otherwise sells, encumbers or disposes of the goods, or if for any other reason the Seller should deem itself insecure, the full amount of the purchase price then remaining unpaid shall at once become due and payable at the option of the Seller.

### 12 BUYER'S DEFAULT

Upon the Buyer's default, the Seller may dispose of the merchandise in any manner that it deems fit and, if it desires to resell same, may do so at private or public sale, with or without notice, and with or without the property being at the place of sale, subject, however, to applicable laws. The Seller or its assigns shall have the right to bid at such sale and may become the purchase of the property. The proceeds of the sale shall first be applied to the expenses incurred in retaking, repairing, storing and selling the goods, reasonable attorney's fees included, and then shall be applied to the payment of the balance due under the contract. Any surplus amount shall be paid to the Buyer. If a deficiency results after the resale, the Buyer agrees to pay such forthwith, together with reasonable attorney's fees, for the recovery of the goods incurred by the Seller. If upon the Buyer's default, the Seller elects not to resell any goods which it may repossess, then the cost of repossession, including reasonable attorney's fees, shall forthwith be due and payable from Buyer to Seller. Buyer agrees to pay all reasonable costs and reasonable attorneys' fees incurred by Seller in enforcing Seller's rights against Buyer, including Seller's right to payment of the purchase price of the goods and Buyer's payment of all other amounts owing to Seller required under this Invoice and Conditions of Sale.

#### 13. SECURITY INTEREST AND TITLE

In states and localities which are governed by the Uniform Commercial Code, this contract shall serve as security agreement, reserving in Seller a security interest until full payment of purchase price. The provisions of the Uniform Commercial Code regarding security interest shall have preference and apply if inconsistent with other terms of the conditions of sale. In states and localities where the Uniform Commercial Code does not apply, title to the goods shall remain in the Seller or its assigns until full payment of the purchase price. Buyer agrees to execute forthwith any and all documents in such a way and form as Seller may need for filing or recording the security interest under the Uniform Commercial Code with the proper registers or offices, or for filing or recording the conditional sales contract.

## 14. SALES AND USE TAX

Buyer agrees to bear and pay any sales or use tax in connection with the purchase herein, and to hold the Seller harmless from payment. At the option the Seller, Buyer shall give evidence of payment or of exemption certificate.

### 15. INSURANCE

The Buyer shall keep the goods insured against damage by fire, water or other casualty as required by Seller, with a company acceptable to Seller, with loss payable to Seller for the total purchase price until the Seller is fully paid. Seller, if it so elects, may place said insurance at Buyer's expense; Seller may cancel such insurance at any time and without notice and may receive the return premium, if any 16. MODIFICATION BY SELLER

Any contract may be assigned or transferred by the Seller, or the time for the making of any payment due by Buyer may be extended by Seller without derogation of any of the rights of the Seller or its assigns. Waiver by any party of any default shall not be deemed a waiver of any subsequent default

### 17. RETURNED GOODS

No goods will be accepted for return unless authorized in writing by Seller. In all cases, transportation and restocking charges will be borne by Buyer. 18. PACKING

The Buyer will be charged for export packaging or other special packing desired. Cost for cartage to ship or transfer express will be added to the invoice. No credit will be allowed if no packing is required.

### 19. CHANGES/CANCELLATION

NORD Gear will not accept changes in specifications to a confirmed order unless such changes are requested in writing and confirmed back in writing. In addition, the purchaser must to agree to any additional charges that may arise from the change. Placing orders on hold or cancellation of orders require Seller's written approval, and are subject to cancellation and/or restocking charges

### 20. BUYER'S RESPONSIBILITY AS TO MAINTENANCE

Buyer shall use and shall require its employees and agents to use all safety devices and guards and shall maintain the same in proper working order. Byer shall use and require its employees and agents to use safe operation procedures in operating the equipment and shall further obey and have its employees and agents obey safety instructions given by Seller. If Buyer fails to meet the obligations herein, Buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and save Seller hamless from any liability or obligation with regard to any personal injuries or property damages directly or indirectly connected with the operation of the equipment. Buyer further agrees to notify Seller promptly and in any event not later than ten (10) days after notice or knowledge of any accident or malfunction involving Seller's equipment which has caused personal injury or property damages and to cooperate fully with Seller in investigating and determining the causes of such accident and malfunction. In the event that Buyer fails to give such notice to Seller or to cooperate with Seller, Buyer shall be obligated to defend, indemnify and save Seller harmless from any such claims arising from such accident. 21. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

(a) If for any reason a provision of a contract is legally invalid, then in such event the rest of the contract shall remain in full force and affect, except that the parties shall try to replace such invalid provision closest to their original mutual intentions. (b) This Invoice and these Conditions of Sale constitute the entire agreement between the parties regarding the subject matter hereof and supercedes all prior agreements, understandings and statements, whether oral or written, regarding such subject matter. No modification to, change in or departure from, the provisions of this Invoice and Conditions of Sale shall be valid or binding on Seller, unless approved in writing by Seller. No course of dealing or usage of trade shall be applicable unless expressly incorporated into this Invoice and Conditions of Sale. Any amendments to any contract or contracts between the parties shall be valid only upon the written consent of both parties.

### 22. NON ASSIGNMENT BY BUYER

Contract or contracts may not be assigned by the Buyer without prior written consent of the Seller. 23. APPLICABLE LAW AND VENUE

All contracts and their interpretation are governed by the applicable, substantive laws of the State of Wisconsin. Any litigation brought by the Buyer regarding this Invoice or goods purchased hereunder may only be brought in the Circuit Court for Dane County, Wisconsin

**NORD Gear Corporation** Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

## 09.29.14

Nord Gear Company Terms 09/14

### agreed by Seller. Buyer shall pay all shipping costs and any costs of removal and re-installation of goods or components. The foregoing limited warranty shall not apply with respect to any goods or components (i) which are not installed, used, operated, serviced or

maintained in accordance with manufacturer's instructions or which are otherwise not properly installed, used, operated, serviced or maintained, or (ii) which are misused, neglected, damaged, altered, repaired, reconfigured or incorrectly wired. Seller makes no representations as to the specifications, capacity or performance of the goods sold hereunder, except as may be specifically set forth in the invoice's written specifications, and any such representations are expressly conditioned upon the accuracy and completeness of the data and information furnished by the buyer and upon the goods being properly installed, used, serviced and maintained by Buyer. Any description or model of the goods is for identification or illustrative purposes only and shall not be deemed to create any warranty, express or implied. THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL EXTEND SOLELY TO BUYER AND NOT TO ANY OTHER PARTY. THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY

any communication, oral or written, from Seller, its officers, employees, agents or representatives, are hereby expressly rejected and shall not be effective or binding upon the Seller, unless specifically hereafter agreed to in writing by Seller and no such additional or different terms or conditions

in any document submitted to Seller by Buyer shall become part of the contract between Buyer and Seller, unless such written acceptance by Seller

specifically recognizes and assents to their inclusion. Any objection by Buyer to the terms and conditions hereof shall be ineffective unless Seller is

An order shall be deemed accepted only when duly confirmed by Seller, at Nord Gear Corporation's home office in Waunakee, Wisconsin, and upon

Prices shown are list prices and may be subject to applicable discounts. Unless otherwise agreed upon in writing, prices are FOB factory Waunakee,

Wisconsin. Prices and discounts are subject to change without notice until order is accepted. Seller's prices do not include cost of any inspection

Seller hereby warrants that the goods sold hereunder shall be free from material defects in material and workmanship, if properly installed and used

under normal operating conditions, for a period of twelve (12) months from the date of installation or eighteen (18) months from date of shipment,

whichever comes first (the "Warranty Period"). With respect to gears and housings only, the Warranty Period is extended to thirty-six (36) months from the date of invoice or twenty-four (24) months from the date of installation, whichever comes first. The limited warranty shall not apoly to any

components or parts which are subject to normal operational wear and tear, including, but not limited to, belts and traction discs. Should any goods

fail to comply with the foregoing limited warranty, Buyer shall provide written notice to Seller of the claimed defect and all relevant details within thirty (30) days of Buyer's discovery of the claimed defect. Buyer shall return the allegedly defective goods to Seller at its facilities in Waunakee,

Wisconsin or to such other location within the USA as may be designated by Seller in its sole discretion, with all shipping and transportation charges

prepaid by Buyer. Seller shall then examine the returned goods to determine if the claimed defect is covered by the limited warranty. If the claimed

defect is covered by the limited warranty, Buyer's sole and exclusive remedy shall be to have Seller repair or replace, at Seller's option, the defective

goods or components in accordance with the terms of this limited warranty. Seller shall have a commercially reasonable time to make such repairs

or replacements and may use new or reconditioned components. Any repair or replacement shall not extend the Warranty Period unless otherwise

such confirmation the order shall become a contract binding upon the parties hereto, their successors and assigns.

IS IN LIEU OF ANY AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. SELLER HEREBY EXCLUDES AND DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IF BUYER SHALL FAIL TO PAY WHEN DUE ANY PORTION OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OR ANY OTHER PAYMENT Required from buyer to seller under this contract. All warranties and remedies set forth herein shall be deemed null and VOID, AB INITIO. THE PARTIES ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY UNDER THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL NOT HAVE FAILED OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE (AS THAT TERM IS USED IN THE UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE) PROVIDED THAT SELLER REMAINS WILLING TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE GOODS WITHIN A COMMERCIALLY REASONABLE TIME. BUYER SPECIFICALLY ACKNOWLEDGES AND AGREES THAT THE PRICE CHARGED BY SELLER FOR THE GOODS IS BASED UPON THE LIMITATIONS OF SELLER'S WARRANTY OBLIGATIONS AND OTHER LIABILITIES AS SET FORTH HEREIN.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER PROVISION HEREOF, IN NO EVENT SHALL SELLER BE LIABLE TO BUYER OR TO ANY OTHER PARTY FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOST PROFITS, OR FOR ANY LOSSES, CLAIMS OR DAMAGES RELAT-ING TO OR ARISING FROM THE USE OR OPERATION OF THE GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL ANY CLAIM OR RECOVERY OF ANY KIND EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE GOODS IDENTIFIED IN THE RELATED INVOICE.

### 5. SHORTAGE AND NONCONFORMITY

Any daim of shortage or that the goods do not conform with the specifications of the order or model must be made in writing within ten (10) days after delivery of the goods (as to which such claim is made) to Buyer or its nominees, but in no event shall the claim be later than within the time limit provided by the carrier or insurance company, otherwise such claim shall be deemed waived. Buyer may not return any goods claimed to be in non-conformity without Seller's prior written authorization. Goods returned without permission will not be accepted, including for credit, and will be returned to Buyer, F.O.B. Sellter's plant. Any claim based on the receipt of damaged Goods must be filed with the carrier which delivered the goods. The samples, measurements, dimensions and weights contained in the Seller's catalogs, sales manuals, photographs and drawings constitute only an approximate guide. The Seller reserves the right to make any change which the Seller, in its absolute discretion, considers necessary. While the goods will be delivered principally according to specifications or standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or insignificant changes in construction are permissible. The same applies to partial deliveries, In the event that Buyer has a verified claim of shortage or nonconformity of the goods to the specifications of the order or the model, and if such claim has been submitted within the required time limit as set forth above, the Seller shall, at its own expense, make up for the shortage of the goods, or replace or repair the goods, as the case may be, but in no event shall Seller be or become liable to Buyer or to any other person or persons for any loss in damage, direct or indirect, arising out of or caused by such incidents or for the loss of profits, business or good will. The liability of the Seller to Buyer, if any hereunder, for breach of warranty, contract, negligence or otherwise, shall in no event exceed the amount of the purchase price of the goods sold with respect to which any damages are claimed. Shipping dates are estimates unless parties expressly agree on time of the essence.

### 6. FORCE MAJEURE

The obligation of the Seller shall be modified or excused, as the case may be, for reasons of Acts of God, war, governmental law regulations, strikes or lock-outs, fire, breakdown of machinery, whether in its own business enterprise, or if for any other cause beyond Seller's control, the goods cannot be delivered or their delivery becomes delayed in whole or in part. In the above instances time for delivery shall be extended for the period of the delay caused, with the proviso, however, that either party may cancel in writing the undelivered portion of the order or contract if the delay exceeds six (6) months from the delivery date originally confirmed by Seller. In no event shall Seller become liable in the aforesaid instances to Buyer or any third party for consequential damages or business loss.

### **7 SHIPMENT AS LINIT**

Each shipment by Seller shall be treated as a separate and distinct unit with respect, but only with respect to forwarding, terms of payment, and the making of claims by the Buyer: provided, however, that if the Buyer defaults in the payment of any obligation to Seller or any installments thereof, under any agreement between Buyer and Seller, or if Buyer refuses to accept any goods when tendered for delivery, the Seller may, on fifteen (15) days written notice to the Buyer, without prejudice to Seller's other lawful remedies, either defer further performance until the defaulted payments are made in full, or make future deliveries for cash in advance only, or treat the entire contract or contracts with Buyer as breached by the Buver and pursue its remedies for breach.



## NORD GEAR LIMITED - TERMS & CONDITIONS OF SALE



#### 1. CONTRACT

Any contract between Nord Gear Limited, hereinafter designated as "Seller", and the party or parties accepting these terms and conditions of sale and any agent, officer, servant, employee or subcontractor of such party or parties, hereinafter designated as "Buyer", is subject to the terms and conditions of sale hereinafter set forth. Any deviation from such terms and conditions must be specifically set forth in writing and consented to by Seller.

#### 2 CONFIRMATION

An order shall be deemed accepted only when duly confirmed by Seller, at Nord Gear Limited's home office in Brampton, Ontario, and upon such confirmation the orders shall become a contract binding upon the parties hereto, their successors and assigns.

#### 3. PRICES

Prices shown are list prices and may be subject to applicable discounts. Unless otherwise agreed upon in writing, prices are FOB factory Brampton, Ontario. Prices and discounts are subject to change without notice until the order is accepted. Seller's prices do not include cost of any inspection permits required.

Its accepted. Series 5 pincles do not include Gost of any inspection permits required. **J. UNITED WARRANTY**Selier warrants the goods sold hereunder to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service not arising from misuse, negligence, or accident, including but not limited to the use, installation, and transportation of the goods by Bwyer, its agents, servants, employees, or by carriers. This warranty shall pertain to any part or parts of any goods to which Buyer or its assigns has within one year from date of delivery given written notice of daimed defects to Selier. Buyer shall be required to furnish Selier with details of such defects and this warranty shall be effective as to such goods which Selier's examination shall disclose to its satisfaction to have been defective and which at Selier's option shall promptly thereafter be returned to Selier or its nominese. EXCEPT POR THE EXPRESS WARRANTIES SET FORT HA BOVE, SELIER HAS MADE NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, AS TO THE GOODS SOLD HEREUNDER, INCLUDING, BUT NOT IMITED TO OR THEIS MERCHANTABILITY OF ITTINES FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY DESCRIPTION OR MODEL OF THE GOODS IS FOR IDENTIFICATION OR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY AND SHALL NOT BE DEEMED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS WARRANTY. The Buyer's exclusive remedy for claims arising from defective on onconforming goods shall be limited to the repair or replacement thereof at the Selier's sole option. THE SELLER SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE OR LIABLE FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISINO 2001 OF OR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT. SELLER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR FOR ANY CLAM, OR DEWENT WILL SELLER BE LABLE FOR SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, EVEN IF SELLER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SELLER Y SAUL NOT DE VENT WILL SELLER BE LABLE FOR SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, EVEN IF SELLER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SELLER YAG GREGATE LIABLITY OF DAMAGES UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, WHETTHER ARISING

### SHORTAGE AND NONCONFORMITY

Any claim of shortage or that the goods do not conform with the specifications of the order or model must be made in writing within ten (10) days after delivery of the goods (as to which such claim is made) to Buyer or its nominees, In writing writin terr (10) days alter delivery of the gloods (as to writer such claim is made) to buyer to is horimetes, but in no event shall the claim be later than writin the time limit provided by the carrier or insurance company, otherwise such claim shall be deemed waived. The samples, measurements, dimensions and weights contained in Seller's catalogs, sales manuals, photographs and drawings constitute only an approximate guide. Seller reserves the right to make any changes which Seller, in its absolute discretion, considers necessary. While the goods will be delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or the delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or the delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or the delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or the delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or the delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon, insignificant deviations or the delivered principally according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon in the standards are appressible according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon in the standards are appressibles according to specifications of standards or quantities agreed upon in the standards are appressible according to the st derivereu principary accounting to specifications of satinations of valinations and equinous agreed upon, insignificant changes in construction are permissible. The same applies to partial deliveres is. In the event that Buyer has a verified claim of shortage or nonconformity of the goods to the specifications of the order or the model, and if such claim has been submitted within the required time limit as set forth above, Seller shall, at its own expense, make up for the shortage of the goods, or replace to repair the goods, as the cause may be, but in one vent shall. Seller be or become liable to Buyer or to any other person or persons for any loss in damage, direct or indirect, arising out of or caused by such incidents or for the loss of profits, business of good will. Shipping dates are exceedent or exceedent encode to the order or the such as a set of the loss of profits, business of good will. estimates unless parties expressly agree on time of the essence

#### 6 FORCE MAIEURE

6. FORCE MAJEURE The obligation of Seller shall be modified or excused, as the case may be, for reasons of Acts of God, war, governmental law regulations, strikes or lock-outs, fire, breakdown of machinery, whether in its own business enterprise, or if for any other cause beyond Seller's control, the goods cannot be delivered or their delivery becomes delayed in whole or in part. In the above instances time for delivery shall be extended for the period of the delay caused, with the proviso, however, that either party may cancel in writing the undelivered portion of the order of contract if the delay exceeds is (6) months from the delivery date originally confirmed by Seller. In no event shall Seller become liable in the aforesaid instances to Buyer or any third party for consequential damages or business loss

#### 7. SHIPMENT AS UNIT

Each shipment by Seller shall be treated as a separate and distinct unit with respect, but only with respect to forwarding, terms of payment, and the making of claims by Buyer, provided, however, that if Buyer defaults in the payment of any obligation to Seller or any installments thereof, under any agreement between Buyer and Seller, or if Buyer refuses to accept any goods when tendered for delivery, Seller may, on fifteen (15) days written notice to Buyer, without prejudice to Seller's other lawful remedies, either defer further performance until the defaulted payments are made in full, or make future deliveries for cash in advance only, or to treat the entire contract or contracts with Buyer as breached by Buyer and pursue its remedies for breach

#### 8. BUYER'S REFUSAL OF D FLIVERY

8. BUYER'S REFUSAL OF D ELIVERY If Buyer refuses to accept delivery of any goods tendered for delivery, then Seller, without prejudice to Seller's other lawful remedies, may either store or cause such goods to be stored in a warehouse, for Buyer's account and at Buyer's cost, risk and expense, or sell such goods (without notice) to any purchaser at public or private sale, and hold Buyer liable for any difference between (A) the contract price of the goods, and (B) the price at which goods are resold less the costs and expense of such resale including brokerage commissions, or restocking charges.

#### GOODS IN TRANSIT

If prior to delivery or while the goods are in transit, Buyer or Seller becomes bankrupt or insolvent, or any petition in bankruptcy or for the reorganization or for appointment of a receiver is filed against Buyer or Seller, as the case may beinkupty of for the reargh networks must be a set of the appointment of a receiver is the dagainst buyer of setter (as the case may be, then the other party hereto may forthwith terminate this contract by giving written notice of such termination. Such termination shall not affect any claim for damages available to Buyer, to Seller, as actually paid in money, is abated by any order of judgment entered or any plan adopted in any bankruptcy, reorganization, receivership, or similar proceeding. Such termination shall not prejudice Seller's rights to any amounts then due under the contract. If Buyer becomes bankrupt or insolvent or any petition in bankruptcy or for reorganization or if a state court receivership is filed against Buyer, then, at its option, Seller may take possession of any goods theretofore sold to Buyer, in connection with which the full purchase price has not been paid, analogous to the terms and provisions set forth in Paragraphs 11 and 12 hereinafter

#### 10.DELIVERY

(A)Unless otherwise agreed, delivery of the goods to any carrier shall constitute delivery to Buyer, and thereafter the (Nonies outer was appeor, elevery of the goods shall be upon Buyer. (B) If Buyer does not give delivery instructions to Seller at least ten (10) days prior to the delivery date ex factory confirmed by Seller, Seller may deliver the goods to a carrier of its own choosing, at Buyer's cost and risk, or, at Seller's option may store the goods on the pier or on any warehouse at Buyer's cost and risk. Any purchase price in such event becomes due and payable within ten (10) days of such storage.

## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll Free in Canada: 800.668.4378

### 09.29.14

11. PAYMENT OF PURCHASE PRICE

11. PAYNENT OF PORCHASE PRICE Time of payment is of the essence under the contract. Upon default in any of the terms of the contract, or failure to comply with any of the conditions thereof, or upon seizure of the property under execution or other legal process, or if Buyer becomes bankrupt or insolvent, or any petitions for recognization or for appointment of a receiver is filed against Buyer, or if Buyer makes any assignment for the benefit of its creditors or otherwise sells, encumbers or disposes of the goods, or if for any other reason Seller should deem tiself insecure, the full amount of the purchase price then remaining unpaid shall at once become due and payable at the option of Seller. Interest on the delinquent payment from the due date thereof until paid shall be at a rate of two (2%) percent per month

#### 12. BUYER'S DEFAULT

Upon Buver's default. Seller may dispose of the merchandise in any manner that it deems fit and, if it desires to upon topon solution, cells have upon solution in an intermediate the any manufer that in decision in any, in it decisions to result same, may do so at private or public sale, with or without notice, and with or without the property being at the place of sale, subject, however, to applicable laws. Seller or its assigns shall have the right to bid at such sale and may become the purchaser of the property. The proceeds of the sale shall first be applied to the expenses incurred in retaking, repairing, storing and selling the goods; reasonable solicitor's fees included, and then shall be applied to the payment of the balance due under the contract. Any surplus amount shall be paid to Buyer. If a deficiency results after the sale, Buyer agrees to pay such forthwith, together with reasonable solicitor's fees, for the recovery of the goods incurred by Seller. If upon Buyer's default, Seller elects not to reseil any goods which it may reposses, then the cost of repossession, including reasonable solicitor's fees, shall forthwith be due and payable from Buyer to Seller.

#### **13. SECURITY INTEREST AND TITLE**

13. SECURITY INTEREST AND TITLE In provinces which are governed by a Personal Property Security Act, this contract shall serve as a security agreement, reserving in Seller a security interest until full payment of the purchase price. The provisions of the Personal Property Security Act regarding security interest shall have preference and apply if inconsistent with other terms of the conditions of sale herein. In provinces where a Personal Property Security Act does not apply, title to the goods shall remain in the Seller or its assigns until full payment of the purchase price. Buyer agrees to execute forthwith any and all documents in such a way and form as Seller may need for filing or recording the security interest under a Personal Property Security Act with the proper registers or offices, or for filing or recording the Conditional Sales Contract herein.

### 14. SALES AND USE TAX

Selier's prices do not include sales, use, excise or other taxes payable to any governmental authority in respect of the sale of Selier's goods. Buyer shall pay, in addition to Selier's price, the amount of any such taxes or shall reimburse Selier for the amount thereof that Selier may be required to pay. At the option of Selier, Buyer shall give evidence of payment or of exemption certificate.

#### 15. INSURANCE

Buyer shall keep the goods insured against damage by fire, water or other casualty as required by Seller, with a company acceptable to Seller, with loss payable to Seller for the total purchase price until Seller is fully paid. Seller, if it so elects, may place said insurance at Buyer's expense; Seller may cancel such insurance at any time and without notice and may receive the return premium, if any

16. MODIFICATION BY SELLER Any contract may be assigned or transferred by Seller, or the time for the making of any payment due by Buyer may be extended by Seller without derogation of any of the rights of Seller or its assigns. Waiver by any party of any default shall not be deemed a waiver of any subsequent default.

### 17 RETURNED GOODS

No goods will be accepted for return unless authorized in writing by Seller. In all cases, transportation and restocking charges will be borne by Buyer.

#### 18. PACKING

Seller does not charge for standard packaging for domestic shipment. Buyer will be charged, however, for export packaging or other special packing besired. Cost for caratege to ship or transfer express will be added to the invoice. No credit will be allowed if no packing is required.

#### 19. EXPORT ORDER Export orders are to be accompanied by a confirmed irrevocable Letter of Credit in Seller's favor, in Canadian currency, with an accredited Canadian bank, subject to Seller's draft, with shipping documents attached

20. CANCELLATION

Placing orders on hold or cancellation of orders require Seller's written approval, and are subject to cancellation and/or restocking charges.

21. BUYER'S RESPONSIBILITY AS TO MAINTENANCE Buyer shall use and shall require its employees and agents to use all safety devices and guards and shall maintain the same in proper working order. Buyer shall use and require its employees and agents to use safe operating procedures in operating the equipment and shall further obey and have its employees and agents obey safety instructions given by Seller. If Buyer fails to meet the obligations herein, Buyer agrees to indemnify and save Seller harmless from any liability or obligation with regard to any personal injuries or property damages directly or indirectly connected with the operation of the equipment. Buyer further agrees to notify Seller promptly and in any event not later than ten (10) days after notice or knowledge of any accident or malfunction involving Seller's equivalent with the operation linear or property domages and to expected fully with Seller. Seller's equipment which has caused personal injury or poperty damages and to cooperate fully with Seller in investigating and determining the causes of such accident and malfunction. In the event that Buyer fails to give such notice to Seller or to cooperate with Seller, Buyer shall be obligated to indemnify and save Seller harmless from any such claims arising from such accident.

#### 22. MISCELLANOUS PROVISIONS

(A)If for any reason a provision of a contract is legally invalid, then in such event the rest of the contract shall remain in full force and affect, except that the parties shall try to replace such invalid provision with a provision closest to their original mutual intentions. (B) Any amendments to any contract or contracts require the consent in writing by both parties. Headings in this document are for ease of reference only.

#### 23. NON ASSIGNMENT BY BUYER

Contract or contracts may not be assigned by Buyer without prior written consent of Seller

#### 24. APPLICABLE LAW

This agreement shall be governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the applicable laws of Canada. Buyer and Seller agree that any judicial proceeding with respect to this agreement must be brought and maintained in the City of Toronto, In the Province of Ontario.

This instrument sets forth the entire understanding and agreement of the parties hereto in respect of the subject matter hereof, and all prior undertaking between the parties hereto, together with all representations and obligations of such parties in respect of such subject matter, shall be superseded by and merged into this instrument.

#### 26

The provisions of this agreement shall bind and ensure to the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective heirs, executors, administrators, successors and (subject to any restrictions or assignment herein above set forth) assigns, as the case may be.

The parties acknowledge that they have requested this document and all notices or other documents relating thereto be drafted in the English language.

Les parties reconnaissent qu'ils ont requis que ce contrat et tous les avis ou autres documents qui s'y rapportent soient rédiges en langue anglaise.

"Terms and Conditions in French available upon request.

## **NORD Gear Corporation** Toll Free in the United States: 888.314.6673

# **For Increased Satisfaction**

## **NORD 911**

Trouble? Just call **715-NORD-911** (in Canada, 905-796-3606). Emergency service is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. We'll answer your call, ship the parts, or build a unit and have it shipped directly to you to provide what you need, when you need it.



## **Global Availability**

From Shanghai to Charlotte, and all points between, NORD reaches customers around the world. Deliveries, service, and product support are close at hand, regardless of your location.





## **Online Tools**

NORD offers comprehensive, searchable product information online. The Internet makes it possible for our customers to reach us anytime, anywhere – 365 days a year, 24 hours a day.

- Online order tracking
- Parts list and maintenance schedules
- Online drive selection software
- DXF scale drawing

## **Worldwide Standards**

NORD products are designed and manufactured based on the latest North American and global standards.





# **Product Overview**

## **UNICASE<sup>™</sup> SPEED REDUCERS**



## **HELICAL IN-LINE**

- Foot or Flange Mount
- Torque up to 205,000 lb-in
- Gear ratios 1.82:1 to over 300,000:1



## **NORDBLOC®.1 HELICAL IN-LINE**

- Foot or Flange Mount
- Torque up to 26,550 lb-in
- Gear ratios 1.88:1 to over 370:1



## PARALLEL HELICAL CLINCHER™

- Shaft, Flanae or Foot Mount
- Torque up to 797,000 lb-in
- Gear ratios 4.26:1 to over 300,000:1



## SCP SCREW CONVEYOR PACKAGE

- Shaft, or Flange Mount
- Torque up to 53,100 lb-in
- Gear ratios 4.32:1 to over 1500:1



### **RIGHT ANGLE HELICAL-BEVEL 2-STAGE**

## - Foot, Flange or Shaft Mount

- Torque up to 5,840 lb-in
- Gear ratios 4.1:1 to 70:1



## **RIGHT ANGLE HELICAL-BEVEL**

- Foot, Flange or Shaft Mount
- Torque up to 283,000 lb-in
- Gear ratios 8.04:1 to over 300,000:1



## **RIGHT ANGLE HELICAL-WORM**

- Foot, Flange or Shaft Mount
- Torque up to 27,585 lb-in
- Gear ratios 4.40:1 to over 300,000:1

## HIGH PERFORMANCE **MOTORS & BRAKEMOTORS**



## **INVERTER/VECTOR DUTY**

- Standard or Energy Efficient
- Integral, NEMA or Metric IEC
- 1/6 to 250 hp

MIDWEST

Waunakee, WI (Madison)

Phone: 608.849.7300







## - Foot, Flange or Shaft Mount

FLEXBLOC<sup>™</sup> WORM

- Modular bolt-on options

- Torque up to 4,683 lb-in

- Modular bolt-on options

- Gear ratios - 5:1 to 3,000:1

MAXXDRIVE<sup>™</sup> LARGE INDUSTRIAL

MAXXDRIVE<sup>™</sup> LARGE INDUSTRIAL

GEAR UNITS PARALLEL HELICAL

- Torque up to 2,027,000 lb-in

- Gear ratios – 5:1 to 1,600:1

**GEAR UNITS HELICAL-BEVEL** 

- Torque up to 2,027,000 lb-in - Gear ratios – 5:1 to 1,600:1

UNICASE<sup>™</sup> SPEED REDUCERS





## NORDAC AC VECTOR DRIVES

- Modular bolt-on options

## **SK180E FAMILY**

- Distributed, simple speed control
- 380-480V, 3-phase to 3.0 hp
- 200-240V, 3-phase to 1.5 hp
- 200-240V, 1-phase to 1.5 hp
- 100-120V, 1-phase to 0.75 hp

## SK200E FAMILY

- Distributed, high performance
- 380-480V, 3-phase to 30 hp
- 200-240V, 3-phase to 15 hp
- 200-240V, 1-phase to 1.5 hp
- 100-120V, 1-phase to 1 hp

## **SK500E FAMILY**

- Compact, cabinet mount, high performance
- 380-480V, 3-phase, to 125 hp
- 200-240V, 3-phase, to 25 hp
- 200-240V, 1-phase, to 3 hp
- 100-120V, 1-phase, to 1.5 hp

## DRIVESYSTEMS

## www.nord.com

WEST

Corona, CA (Los Angeles) Phone: 951.393.6565

## **NORD Gear Corporation**

National Customer Service Toll-Free: 888.314.6673 info.us@nord.com

Page 139

EAST Charlotte, NC Phone: 980.215.7575

## **NORD Gear Limited**

Toll-Free in Canada: 800.668.4378 info.ca@nord.com

## CANADA

Brampton, ON (Toronto) Phone: 905.796.3606





















## INTELLIGENT DRIVESYSTEMS, WORLDWIDE SERVICES



## B 1091 – en

Motors

**Operating and Assembly Instructions** 





## Safety and operating instructions for electric motors

(according to: Low Voltage Directive2006/95/EEC (as of 20/04/2016: 2014/35/EU

### 1 General

During operation, devices may, depending on their protection class, have live, bare, moving or rotating parts or hot surfaces.

Unauthorised removal of covers, improper use, incorrect installation or operation causes a risk of serious personal injury or material damage.

Further information can be found in this documentation.

All transportation, installation commissioning and maintenance work must be carried out by qualified personnel (compliant with IEC 364 or. CENELEC HD 384 or DIN VDE 0100 and IEC 664 or DIN VDE 0110 and national accident prevention regulations).

For the purposes of these basic safety instructions, qualified personnel are persons who are familiar with the assembly, installation, commissioning and operation of this product and who have the relevant qualifications for their work.

### 2. Proper use in Europe

The devices are components intended for installation in electrical systems or machines.

When installed in machines, the devices must not be commissioned (i.e. commencement of the proper use) until it has been ensured that the machine meets the provisions of the EC Directive 2006/42/EEC (Machinery Directive); EN 60204 must also be complied with.

Commissioning (i.e. implementation of proper use) is only permitted if the EMC directive (2004/108/EEC) is complied with (as of 20/04/2016: 2014/30/EU)).

Devices with a CE label meet the requirements of the Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EEC (as of 20/04/2016: 2014/35/EU). The stated harmonized standards for the devices are used in the declaration of conformity.

Technical data and information for connection conditions can be found on the rating plate and in the documentation, and must be complied with.

The devices may only be used for safety functions which are described and explicitly approved.

### 3. Transport, storage

Information regarding transport, storage and correct handling must be complied with.

## 4. Installation

The installation and cooling of the equipment must be implemented according to the regulations in the corresponding documentation.

The devices must be protected against impermissible loads. Especially during transport and handling, components must not be deformed and/or insulation distances must not be changed. Electrical components must not be mechanically damaged or destroyed (this may cause a health hazard!).

### 5. Electrical Connection

When working on live devices, the applicable national accident prevention regulations must be complied with (e.g. BGV A3, formerly VBG 4).

The electrical installation must be implemented according to the applicable regulations (e.g. cable cross-section, fuses, earth lead connections). Further instructions can be found in the documentation.

Information regarding EMC-compliant installation – such as shielding, earthing, location of filters and installation of cables – can be found in the documentation for the devices. These instructions must be complied with even with CE marked devices. Compliance with the limiting values specified in the EMC legal regulations is the responsibility of the manufacturer of the system or machine.

### 6. Operation

Where necessary, systems in which the devices are installed must be equipped with additional monitoring and protective equipment according to the applicable safety requirements, e.g. legislation concerning technical equipment, accident prevention regulations, etc.

The parameterisation and configuration of the devices must be selected so that no hazards can occur.

All covers must be kept closed during operation.

### 7. Maintenance and repairs

The following applies in particular for operation with frequency inverters:

After the devices are disconnected from the power supply, live equipment components and power connections should not be touched immediately, because of possible charged capacitors. Observe the applicable information signs located on the device.

Further information can be found in this documentation.

## These safety instructions must be kept in a safe place!

## **Documentation**

Title:	B 1091
Order – No.:	6051302
Series:	Asynchronous motors / Synchronous motors
	<ul> <li>1 and 3-phase asynchronous motors</li> </ul>
	SK 63 <sup>*1</sup> / <sup>*2)</sup> * <sup>3)</sup> up to SK 315 <sup>*1</sup> / <sup>*2)</sup> * <sup>3)</sup>
	<sup>1)</sup> Power code: S, SA, SX, M, MA, MB, MX, L, LA, LB, LX, R, X, Y, A, W
	- optionally supplemented with: H, P
	<sup>2</sup> ) Fole number labelling. 2, 4, 0, 0,
	<ul> <li>3-phase synchronous motors</li> </ul>
	SK 63* <sup>1)*2)/*3) *4)</sup> up to SK 132 <sup>*1)*2)/*3) <sup>*4)</sup></sup>
	<sup>1)</sup> Winding version: T, F,
	<sup>2)</sup> Power number: 1 to 9
	3) Pole number labelling: 4, 6, 8,
	Three phase completeness motors
	• Inree-phase asynchronous motors
	<sup>1)</sup> Power code: S SA SX M MA MB MX I IA IB IX B X Y A W
	- optionally supplemented with: H. P
	<sup>2)</sup> Pole number labelling: 2, 4, 6
	3) Options
	SK 63* <sup>1</sup> /* <sup>2</sup> ) 3D * <sup>3</sup> ) up to SK 200* <sup>1</sup> /* <sup>2</sup> ) 3D * <sup>3</sup> )
	<sup>1)</sup> Power code: S, SA, SX, M, MA, MB, MX, L, LA, LB, LX, R, X, Y, A, W
	- optionally supplemented with: H, P
	<sup>2)</sup> Pole number labelling: 2, 4, 6
	<sup>3)</sup> Options
	with ATEX labelling 🕼 II 3D Ex tc IIIB T °C Dc
	SK 63* <sup>1</sup> / <sup>*2)</sup> 2G <sup>*3)</sup> up to SK 200 <sup>*1</sup> / <sup>*2)</sup> 2G <sup>*3)</sup>
	<sup>1)</sup> Power code: S, SA, SX, M, MA, MB, MX, L, LA, LB, LX, R, X, Y, A, W
	- optionally supplemented with: H, P
	<sup>27</sup> Pole number labelling: 2, 4, 6 <sup>3)</sup> further options
	with ATEX labelling 🥸 II 2G Ex eb IIC T3 Gb
	$SK = S^{(1)}(*2) = 2C + 3$ to $SK = 200^{(1)}(*2) = 2C + 3$
	<sup>1)</sup> Power code: S SA SX M MA MR MX I LA IR IX R X Y A W
	- optionally supplemented with: H. P
	<sup>2)</sup> Pole number labelling: 2, 4, 6
	<sup>3)</sup> further options
	WITH AT EXTRADEILING 🐨 II 3G EX EC IIC 13 GC

## **Version list**

Title, date	Order number	Comments
<b>B 1091</b> , January 2015	<b>6051302</b> / 0215	-
B 1091,	<b>6051302</b> / 1016	General corrections
March 2016		Structural adjustments to document
<b>B 1091</b> , December 2016	<b>6051302</b> / 4816	General corrections
<b>B 1091</b> , June 2017	<b>6051302</b> / 2417	Technical supplements
<b>B 1091</b> , August 2017	<b>6051302</b> / 3517	Technical supplements
B 1091,	6051302 / 2318	General corrections
June 2018		Update of EU/EC Declaration of Conformity 2D/3D
B 1091,	6051302 / 3118	General corrections
August 2018		Section for operation with frequency inverter removed
		Section for special operating conditions, permissible surrounding area supplemented
		Ignition protection type labelling and type plates updated
		Update of EU/EC Declaration of Conformity 2G/3G

## **Copyright notice**

As an integral component of the device described here, this document must be provided to all users in a suitable form.

Any editing or amendment or other utilisation of the document is prohibited.

## **Publisher**

## Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co. KG

Getriebebau-Nord-Straße 1 • 22941 Bargteheide, Germany • http://www.nord.com/ Fon +49 (0) 45 32 / 289-0 • Fax +49 (0) 45 32 / 289-2253

Member of the NORD DRIVESYSTEMS Group
# **Table of Contents**

1.1       Safety and installation notes       9         1.1.2       List of safety and installation notes       10         1.2       Field of use       11         1.3       Correct handling of electric motors       12         1.3.1       Transport, storage       12         1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Output shafts       14         1.3.6       Electrical connection       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety connections       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       23         3.1.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       25         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       23	1	General8				
1.11       Explanation of labels used       9         1.12       List of seley and installation notes       10         1.2       Field of use       11         1.3       Correct handling of electric motors       12         1.3.1       Transport, storage       12         1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Output shafts       14         1.3.6       Electrical connection       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       23         3.1.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       25         3.1.3.1       Terminal box cover seal		1.1	Safety a	and installation notes	9	
1.12       List of safety and installation notes       10         1.2       Field of use       11         1.3       Correct handling of electric motors       12         1.3.1       Transport, Storage       12         1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Output shafts       14         1.3.6       Electrical connection       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inveter       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       20         2.4       General overhaul.       21         2.4       General overhaul.       21         2.4       General overhaul.       21         3.1       Cable connections.       23         3.1.1       Cable gland       22         3.1.2       Cable connections.       23 <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td>1.1.1</td><td>Explanation of labels used</td><td>9</td></t<>			1.1.1	Explanation of labels used	9	
1.2       Field of use       11         1.3       Correct handling of electric motors       12         1.3.1       Transport, storage       12         1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Output shafts       14         1.3.6       Electrical connection       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance and servicing       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1.1       Cable connections.       23         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.1       Cable connections       25         3.1.2       Cable gland       26         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor swith increased ignition protection, t			1.1.2	List of safety and installation notes	10	
1.3       Correct handling of electric motors.       12         1.3.1       Transport, storage       12         1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Output shafts       14         1.3.6       Diputy thafts       14         1.3.6       Diputy thafts       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter       16         1.3.8       Controlisioning       17         1.3.9       Controlisioning       17         1.3.0       Disposal       18         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       22         3.1.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.1       Cable gland       25         3.1.6       Probacitive devices       25         3.1.7       Operatine w		1.2	Field of	use	11	
1.3.1       Transport, storage       12         1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.6       Dupt shafts       14         1.3.6       Electrical connection       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       Gable gland       23         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       25         3.1.6       Protecitve devices       25		1.3	Correct	handling of electric motors	12	
1.3.2       Installation       13         1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Outperation with frequency inverter.       16         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter.       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.1       Safety measures       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       20         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.5       3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3			1.3.1	Transport, storage	12	
1.3.3       Balancing, drive elements       13         1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Clettical connection       15         1.3.6       Electrical connection       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter.       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3.11       Cable gland       23         3.12       Cable connections       23         3.13       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.14       Motors with frequency inverter       26         3.15       Protective devices       25         3.16       Depratine with frequency inverter       26         3.18       Protective devices       27         3.19       Depratine operating cond			1.3.2	Installation	13	
1.3.4       Alignment       14         1.3.5       Output sharts       14         1.3.6       Dictuti sharts       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       23         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.7       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Further operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Proterive devices       25         3.1.7       Operating			1.3.3	Balancing, drive elements	13	
1.3.6       Electrical connection.       15         1.3.7       Operation with frequency inverter.       16         1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance.       17         1.3.9       Commissioning       17         1.3.10       Disposal.       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals.       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul.       21         2.4       General overhaul.       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas.       22         3.1.1       Cable gland.       23         3.1.2       Cable gland.       23         3.1.1       Cable gland.       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter.       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.1       Applied standards       28			1.3.4	Alignment	14	
1.3.7         Operation with frequency inverter         16           1.3.8         Checking the insulation resistance         17           1.3.9         Commissioning         17           1.3.10         Disposal         18           2         Maintenance and servicing         19           2.1         Safety measures         19           2.2         Bearing replacement intervals         20           2.3         Maintenance intervals         21           2.4         General overhaul         21           3         ATEX Explosion hazard areas         22           3.1         Cable connections         23           3.1.1         Cable connections         23           3.1.2         Cable connections         23           3.1.3         Terminal box cover seals         25           3.1.4         Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6         24           3.1.4         Painting         27           3.1.7         Operating conditions         25           3.1.7         Operating with frequency inverter         26           3.1.8         Repairs         27           3.1.1         Applied standards.         28           3.2			1.3.5	Electrical connection	14	
1.3.8       Checking the insulation resistance       17         1.3.0       Disposal       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3.4       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Printer operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28			1.3.0	Operation with frequency inverter	16	
1.3.9       Commissioning.       17         1.3.10       Disposal       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable onnections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Hotor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Purther operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Terminal box cover seals       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.1       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.1       Applied standards       28         3.1.1       Applied standards       28         3.2       Motors w			1.3.8	Checking the insulation resistance	17	
1.3.10       Disposal.       18         2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       23         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Principlev devices       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.1       Applied standards       28         3.1.1       Apple at for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.1       Applied standards       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30       32.2         3.2.1			1.3.9	Commissioning	17	
2       Maintenance and servicing       19         2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Puther operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Reparis       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.1       Applied standards       28         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30			1.3.10	Disposal	18	
2.1       Safety measures       19         2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position - special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Further operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.11       Applied standards       29         3.2.1       Cable connections       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position - special features tor IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions	2	Mainte	enance a	and servicing	19	
2.2       Bearing replacement intervals       20         2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.1       Texplosion hazard areas       22         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Further operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.1       Applied standards       28         3.1.1       Applied standards       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2	-	2.1	Safetv n	neasures		
2.3       Maintenance intervals       21         2.4       General overhaul       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas.       22         3.       ATEX Explosion hazard areas.       22         3.       ATEX Explosion hazard areas.       22         3.       1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Further operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.11       Applied standards       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features tor IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features tor IM V3, IM V6       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32       32		2.2	Bearing	replacement intervals	20	
2.4       General overhaul.       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas		2.3	Mainten	ance intervals	21	
2.4       General overnau       21         3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas		2.0	Conoral		21	
3       ATEX Explosion hazard areas       22         3.       Motors with increased ignition protection, type Ex eb       22         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position - special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Further operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.11       Applied standards       28         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable gland       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor swith ingliton protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec       29         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor swith ignition protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec       32		2.4	General	overnau		
3.1       Motors with increased ignition protection, type Ex eb       22         3.1.1       Cable gland       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       23         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Perturber operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operating with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.1       Applied standards       28         3.2       Motors with ignition protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec       29         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.3 </td <td>3</td> <td>ATEX</td> <td>Explosi</td> <td>on hazard areas</td> <td>22</td>	3	ATEX	Explosi	on hazard areas	22	
3.1.1       Cable connections       23         3.1.2       Cable connections       24         3.1.3       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.1.5       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.11       Applied standards       28         3.2       Motors with ignition protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec       29         3.2.1       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       33         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.2.		3.1	Motors v	with increased ignition protection, type Ex eb	22	
3.12       Cable Connections       23         3.13       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.14       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       24         3.15       Further operating conditions       25         3.16       Protective devices       25         3.17       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.18       Repairs       27         3.19       Painting       27         3.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.111       Applied standards       28         3.2       Motors with ignition protection class Non Sparking Ex ec       29         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       33         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.3 <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td>3.1.1</td><td>Cable gland</td><td>23</td></t<>			3.1.1	Cable gland	23	
3.1.1       Terminal box cover seals       24         3.1.2       Further operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.11       Applied standards       28         3.2       Motors with ignition protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec       29         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       32         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.3       3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.3.1       Commissioning information / Field of application			3.1.2	Cable connections	23	
3.1.5       Puther operating conditions       25         3.1.6       Protective devices       25         3.1.7       Operation with frequency inverter       26         3.1.8       Repairs       27         3.1.9       Painting       27         3.1.10       Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079       28         3.1.11       Applied standards       28         3.2       Motors with ignition protection class Non Sparking Ex ec       29         3.2.1       Cable gland       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       33         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.3       Applied standards       34         3.3       Lorenza in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079       34         3.3       Lorenza in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079       35			314	Motor position – special features for IM V3_IM V6	24 24	
3.1.6Protective devices253.1.7Operation with frequency inverter.263.1.8Repairs273.1.9Painting273.1.10Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079.283.1.11Applied standards283.2.1Cable gland303.2.2Cable connections303.2.3Terminal box cover seals313.2.4Motor position - special features for IM V3, IM V6313.2.5Further operating conditions323.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079 and IEC 60079353.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.3Electrical Connection373.3.4Cable and wiring glands383.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance40			3.1.5	Purther operating conditions	25	
3.1.7Operation with frequency inverter.263.1.8Repairs273.1.9Painting273.1.10Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079.283.1.11Applied standards283.2Motors with ignition protection class Non Sparking Ex ec.293.2.1Cable gland303.2.2Cable connections303.2.3Terminal box cover seals313.2.4Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6.313.2.5Further operating conditions323.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079.343.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application.363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.4Cable and wiring glands383.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance40			3.1.6	Protective devices	25	
3.1.8Repairs273.1.9Painting273.1.10Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079283.1.11Applied standards283.2Motors with ignition protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec293.2.1Cable gland303.2.2Cable connections303.2.3Terminal box cover seals313.2.4Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6313.2.5Further operating conditions323.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079343.3Lectrical Connection373.3.4Cable and wring glands383.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.1Maintenance40		3 3 3	3.1.7 3.1.8 3.1.9	Operation with frequency inverter	26	
3.1.9Painting273.1.10Type plate for NORD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079283.1.11Applied standards283.2Motors with ignition protection blass Non Sparking Ex ec293.2.1Cable gland303.2.2Cable connections303.2.3Terminal box cover seals313.2.4Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6313.2.5Further operating conditions323.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079343.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.4Cable and wiring glands373.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Mainter operating conditions403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance40				Repairs	27	
3.1.10       Type plate for NQRD Ex eb motors according to EN 60079				Painting	27	
3.2       Motors with ignition protection class Non Sparking Ex ec			3.1.10	Type plate for NVRD EX eb motors according to EN 60079	28	
3.2       Motors with ignition protection basis ion sparking Ex ec.       29         3.2.1       Cable connections       30         3.2.2       Cable connections       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       33         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.2.10       Applied standards       34         3.2.1       Commissioning information / Field of application       36         3.3.1       Commissioning information / Field of application       36         3.3.3       Electrical Connection       37         3.3.4       Cable and wiring glands       38         3.3.5       Permissible ambient temperature range       39         3.3.6       Painting       39         3.3.7       IEC-B14 motors       39         3.3.8       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       39         3.3.9       Further operating conditions <td< td=""><td></td><td>3. 22 M</td><td>J.I.II</td><td>Applied Standards.</td><td>20</td></td<>		3. 22 M	J.I.II	Applied Standards.	20	
3.2.1       Cable genue       30         3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       33         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.2.10       Applied standards       34         3.3       Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079       and IEC 60079         3.3.1       Commissioning information / Field of application       36         3.3.2       Terminal box cover seals       37         3.3.4       Cable and wiring glands       38         3.3.5       Permissible ambient temperature range       39         3.3.6       Painting       39         3.3.7       IEC-B14 motors       39         3.3.9       Further operating conditions       40         3.3.10       Structure and method of use       40         3.3.11       Minimum cross section of bonding conductors       40		3.2	3 2 1	Cable gland	29	
3.2.3       Terminal box cover seals       31         3.2.4       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       31         3.2.5       Further operating conditions       32         3.2.6       Protective devices       32         3.2.7       Repairs       32         3.2.8       Painting       33         3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079       34         3.2.10       Applied standards       34         3.3       Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079       34         3.3.1       Commissioning information / Field of application       36         3.3.2       Terminal box cover seals       37         3.3.3       Electrical Connection       37         3.3.4       Cable and wiring glands       38         3.5       Permissible ambient temperature range       39         3.3.7       IEC-B14 motors       39         3.3.8       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6       39         3.3.9       Further operating conditions       40         3.3.10       Structure and method of use       40         3.3.11       Minimum cross section of bonding conductors       40        3.3.12     Maint			322	Cable connections		
3.2.4Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6313.2.5Further operating conditions323.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079-0 and IEC 60079353.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.3Electrical Connection373.4Cable and wiring glands383.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.6Painting393.7IEC-B14 motors393.9Further operating conditions403.10Structure and method of use403.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.12Maintenance41			3.2.3	Terminal box cover seals	31	
3.2.5Further operating conditions323.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079353.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.2.3Terminal box cover seals373.3.4Cable and wiring glands383.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.6Painting393.7IEC-B14 motors393.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.9Further operating conditions403.10Structure and method of use403.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.12Maintenance41			3.2.4	Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6	31	
3.2.6Protective devices323.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079 and IEC 60079353.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.3Electrical Connection373.4Cable and wiring glands383.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.6Painting393.7IEC-B14 motors393.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.9Further operating conditions403.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.12Maintenance41			3.2.5	Further operating conditions	32	
3.2.7Repairs323.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079-0 and IEC 60079353.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.3Electrical Connection373.4Cable and wiring glands383.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.6Painting393.7IEC-B14 motors393.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.12Maintenance41			3.2.6	Protective devices	32	
3.2.8Painting333.2.9Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079343.2.10Applied standards343.3Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079 and IEC 60079353.3.1Commissioning information / Field of application363.3.2Terminal box cover seals373.3.3Electrical Connection373.4Cable and wiring glands383.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.6Painting393.7IEC-B14 motors393.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.12Maintenance41			3.2.7	Repairs	32	
3.2.9       Type plate for NORD Ex ec motors according to EN 60079.			3.2.8	Painting	33	
3.3       Motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 22 according to EN 60079-9 and IEC 60079.       35         3.3       Commissioning information / Field of application.       36         3.3.1       Commissioning information / Field of application.       36         3.3.2       Terminal box cover seals.       37         3.3.3       Electrical Connection.       37         3.3.4       Cable and wiring glands       38         3.3.5       Permissible ambient temperature range.       39         3.3.6       Painting       39         3.3.7       IEC-B14 motors.       39         3.3.9       Further operating conditions.       40         3.3.10       Structure and method of use       40         3.3.11       Minimum cross section of bonding conductors.       40			3.2.9	Applied standards	34 34	
3.3       Commissioning information / Field of application		33	Motors f	Applied standards	25	
3.3.2       Terminal box cover seals		3.3	331	Commissioning information / Field of application		
3.3.3Electrical Connection373.3.4Cable and wiring glands383.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance41			3.3.2	Terminal box cover seals		
3.3.4Cable and wiring glands383.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance41			3.3.3	Electrical Connection	37	
3.3.5Permissible ambient temperature range393.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance41			3.3.4	Cable and wiring glands	38	
3.3.6Painting393.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance41			3.3.5	Permissible ambient temperature range	39	
3.3.7IEC-B14 motors393.3.8Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6393.3.9Further operating conditions403.3.10Structure and method of use403.3.11Minimum cross section of bonding conductors403.3.12Maintenance41			3.3.6	Painting	39	
3.3.8       Motor position – special features for IM V3, IM V6			3.3.7	IEC-B14 motors	39	
3.3.9       Further operating conductors       40         3.3.10       Structure and method of use       40         3.3.11       Minimum cross section of bonding conductors       40         3.3.12       Maintenance       41			3.3.8 2 2 0	Invotor position – special reatures for IM V3, IM V6	39	
3.3.11       Minimum cross section of bonding conductors       40         3.3.12       Maintenance       41			3.3.9 3.3.10	Structure and method of use	<del>4</del> 0 ⊿∩	
3.3.12 Maintenance			3.3.11	Minimum cross section of bonding conductors.		
			3.3.12	Maintenance	41	

	3.4	tions for motors for use in Zone 21 and Zone 224	2
		Operation with frequency inverter4	2
		.2 External fan4	3
		.3 Second temperature sensor 2TF44	4
		.4 Back stop4	4
		.5 Brake	4
		.6 Overview of brake installation for NORD ATEX motors4	5
		.7 NORD Ex motor type plate (Ex tb, EX tc) according to EN 60079 for operation with a frequency inverter	а 6
	3.5	plosion protected motors according to TP TC012/2011 for the Escasian Economic Union4	7
		.1 Type plates / Labelling4	7
		.2 Standards	8
		.3 Service life	3
		.4 Special operating conditions (X-labelling)	3
4	Synch	ous motors – special information4	9
	4.1	be designation4	9
	4.2	nnection4	9
	4.3	coders	0
	4.4	mmissioning50	0
	4.5	intenance and servicing	C
5	Repla	ent parts5	1
6	Decla	ons of Conformity	2

#### 1 General

These operating instructions must be read before NORD motors are transported, installed, commissioned, serviced or repaired. All persons who are involved in these tasks must observe these operating instructions. In order to prevent injury or damage, all of the safety information in these operating instructions must be strictly observed.

The information and instructions in the instructions, safety and commissioning information which is supplied, as well as all other instructions must be observed.

This is essential to prevent injury and damage.

The applicable national, local and plant-specific regulations and requirements and regulations must be observed.

# Technical details may vary for special designs and constructions. In case of doubt, we urgently recommend that the manufacturer is contacted, giving details of the type designation and the motor number.

Qualified personnel are persons who due to their training, experience and instruction, and their knowledge of the relevant standards, accident prevention regulations and operating conditions are authorised to carry out the necessary activities.

This also includes knowledge of first aid measures and the local emergency services.

It is assumed that the work for transport, assembly, installation, commissioning, maintenance and repair will be performed by qualified staff.

In particular, the following must be observed:

- Technical data and information regarding permissible use, installation, connection, ambient and operating conditions, which are contained in the catalogue, the order documents and other documentation for the product.
- Local and plant-specific regulations and requirements
- Correct use of tools, lifting and transportation equipment
- · Use of personal protective equipment

For reasons of clarity, the operating instructions do not contain detailed information about possible versions and therefore do not consider all possible cases of installation, operation or servicing.

Because of this, these operating instruction essentially only contain the information which is necessary for proper use by qualified personnel.

In order to prevent faults it is necessary that the prescribed service and inspection work is carried out by appropriately qualified personnel.

- For the operation on an inverter, the planning guideline B1091-1 forms a part of these operating instructions.
- The supplementary operating instructions must be observed if an external fan is present.
- For braking motors, the supplementary brake operating instructions must be observed..

If the operating instructions or the planning guide are lost for any reason, these documents must be obtained from NORD.

#### 1.1 Safety and installation notes

The devices are operating materials intended for use in industrial high voltage systems, and are operated at voltages that could lead to severe injuries or death if they are touched.

The device and its accessories must only be used for the purpose which is intended by the manufacturer. Unauthorised modifications and the use of spare parts and additional equipment which has not been purchased from or recommended by the manufacturer of the device may cause fire, electric shock and injury.

All of the associated covers and protective devices must be used.

Installation and other work may only be carried out by qualified electricians with strict adherence to the operating instructions. Therefore keep these Operating Instructions at hand, together with all supplementary instructions for any options which are used, and give them to each user.

Local regulations for the installation of electrical equipment and accident prevention must be complied with.

# A DANGER Indicates an immediate danger, which may result in death or serious injury. A WARNING Indicates a possibly dangerous situation, which may result in death or serious injury. A CAUTION Indicates a possibly dangerous situation, which may result in slight or minor injuries. NOTICE Indicates a possibly harmful situation, which may cause damage to the product or the environment. Indicates hints for use and useful information.

#### 1.1.1 Explanation of labels used

#### 1.1.2 List of safety and installation notes

#### DANGER!

#### **Electric shock**

The motor is operated with a dangerous voltage. Touching certain conducting components (connection terminals and supply cables) will cause electric shock with possibly fatal consequences.

Even when the motor is at a standstill (e.g. due to the electronic block of a connected frequency inverter or a jammed drive unit) the connection terminals and supply cables may carry a dangerous voltage. A motor standstill is not identical to electrical isolation from the mains.

Even if the drive unit has been disconnected from the mains, a connected motor may rotate and possibly generate a dangerous voltage.

Installation and work must only be carried out when the motor is at a standstill and is **disconnected** (all phases disconnected from the mains).

Follow the **5 Safety Rules** (1. Switch off the power, 2. Secure against switching on, 3. Check for no voltage, 4. Earthing and short circuiting, 5. Cover or fence off neighbouring live components).

# 

#### Hazard due to heavy loads

The large weight of the motor must be taken into account during any transportation or installation work.

Incorrect handling may cause the motor to fall or swing without control and therefore cause severe, and possibly fatal injuries due to impact, crushing and other physical injuries. In addition, severe damage to the motor and its surroundings are possible.

Therefore:

Ω

- Do not stand under suspended loads
- Only use the attachment points provided
- Check that lifting equipment and lashings have and adequate load capacity and are undamaged
- Avoid hectic movements
- Use personal protective equipment

#### WARNING

#### Injury due to movement

Under certain conditions (e.g. switching on the power supply, releasing a holding brake) the motor may start to move. The machinery which it drives (press / chain hoist / roller / fan etc.) may then make an unexpected movement. This may cause various injuries, including to third parties.

Before switching on, secure the danger area by warning and removing all persons from the danger area.

#### WARNING

#### Hazard due to loose parts

Care must be taken that there are no loose parts on the motor. Otherwise, these may cause injury during transportation and installation work, or when the motor in operation.

Loose carrying or lifting eyes may cause the motor to fall during transportation.

Parallel keys on the motor shaft may be thrown out when the motor shaft rotates.

Fasten or remove loose parts and carrying or lifting eyes; secure or remove free parallel shaft keys on the motor shaft(s).

# 

#### Danger of burns

The surface of the motor may heat up to temperatures in excess of 70°C.

Touching the motor may cause local burns to the affected parts of the body (hands, fingers, etc.).

To prevent such injuries, allow sufficient time for cooling down before starting work - the surface temperature should be checked with suitable measuring equipment. In addition, keep sufficient distance from adjacent components during installation, or install protection against contact.

#### 1.2 Field of use

Use of the motors:

The motors may only be used for their intended purpose (to drive machinery).

The motors are constructed with at least protection class IP55 (for the protection class: see rating plate). They may be installed in dusty or damp environments.

In principle the conditions of use and the ambient conditions determine the necessary protection class and any other additional measures. For outdoor installation and vertical versions, e.g. V1 or V5 with the shaft pointing downwards, Getriebebau NORD recommends the use of the double fan cover option [RDD].

Motors must be protected against intensive sunlight, e.g. by the use of a protective cover. The insulation is tropicalised.

Installation altitude:	≤ 1000 m
Ambient temperature:	-20°C+40°C

For standard motors an extended ambient temperature range from -20°C...+60°C is permissible.. In this case, the rated power must be reduced to 82% of the value stated in the catalogue. If the maximum ambient temperature is between +40°C and +60°C, the power output should be inversely linearly interpolated between 100% and 82%.

The motor connection cables and the cable glands must be suitable for temperatures  $\ge 90^{\circ}$ C.

#### **1.3 Correct handling of electric motors**

All work must only be carried out with the power to the system switched off.

#### **1.3.1** Transport, storage

WARNING

#### Danger of falling

Incorrect handling during transport may cause the motor to fall or swing without control and therefore cause severe, and possibly fatal injuries due to impact, crushing and other physical injuries. In addition, severe damage to the motor and its surroundings are possible.

Therefore:

- Use all available carrying eyes on the motor during transport
- Do not attach any additional loads The lifting eyes are only designed for the weight of the motor
- Only use the intended carrying eyes or bolts for transporting attached machinery (e.g. gear unit attachments)
- Sets of machinery must not be lifted by suspension from the individual machines.

To prevent damage to the motor, the motor must always be used with suitable lifting equipment. The roller bearings should be replaced if the time from delivery to commissioning of the motor exceeds 4 years in good conditions (storage in dry, dust and vibration-free areas). This time is greatly reduced in case of unfavourable conditions. If necessary, unprotected machined surfaces (flange surfaces, shaft ends) must be treated with corrosion inhibitors. If necessary, the insulating resistance of the windings must be checked ( $\square$  1.3.8 "Checking the insulation resistance").

Changes in comparison with normal operation (higher current consumption, higher temperatures or vibrations, unusual noises or smells, triggering of monitoring devices, etc.) are indications that the function is impaired. To prevent injury and damage, the responsible maintenance personnel must be informed of these changes.

In case of doubt, switch off the motor as soon as the state of the plant permits.

#### 1.3.2 Installation

- After installation, screwed-on lifting lugs must be tightened or removed.
- Smooth running: Precise alignment of the clutch and a well-balanced drive element (clutch, pulleys, fan, etc.) are prerequisites for smooth vibration-free running.
- Complete balancing of the motor and the drive elements may be necessary.
- The top section of the terminal box and the position of the terminal box can be rotated by 4 x 90 degrees.
- Even if not required, on IEC B14 motors **all four** fixing screws, must be screwed into the flanged bearing plate! The fixing screw threads must be inserted with a sealant, e.g. Loctite 242.

#### WARNING

#### **Electric shock**

The **maximum** depth for screwing into the type plate is  $2 \times d$ . There is a danger that the motor windings may be damaged if longer screws are used. This creates a danger of potential transfer to the housing and danger of electric shock if touched.

- The motor must be inspected for damage before installation and commissioning. A damaged motor must not be commissioned.
- Rotating shaft ends and unused shaft ends must be protected against contact. Unused parallel shaft keys must be secured against being thrown out.
- The motor must be suitable for the installation location. (requirements prescribed by standards, ambient conditions, installation altitude)
- Motor surfaces may become very hot during operation. Suitable protective measures must be taken if there is a danger of contact or a hazard to the vicinity of the installation.

#### 1.3.3 Balancing, drive elements

The fitting and removal of drive elements (clutch, pulley, gear wheel,...) must be performed with suitable equipment. As standard the rotors are balanced with half key balancing. The appropriate form of balancing must be observed if drive elements are installed on the motor shaft. Drive elements must be balanced according to ISO 1940.

The generally required measures for protection against touching the drive elements must be observed. If a motor is started without a drive element, the parallel key must be secured against being thrown out. This also applies for any second shaft end. Alternatively, the parallel shaft key must be removed.

#### 1.3.4 Alignment

In particular with direct coupling, the motor shafts and the driven machine must be axially and radially aligned to each other. Incorrect alignment may result in damage to the bearings, excessive vibration and breakage of the shaft.

#### 1.3.5 Output shafts

The maximum permissible axial ( $F_A$ ) and radial forces ( $F_R$ ) for the A side end of the motor shaft can be obtained from the table below. Getriebebau NORD should be consulted if the radial force ( $F_R$ ) is applied at a distance which is greater than the length E/2.

	FR 0
FA	JE
•••	E
	LE

Туре	F <sub>R</sub> [N]	F <sub>A</sub> [N]
63	530	480
71	530	480
80	860	760
90	910	810
100	1300	1100
112	1950	1640
132	2790	2360
160	3500	3000
180 .X	3500	3000
180	5500	4000
200 .X	5500	4000
225	8000	5000

<u>No</u> axial ( $F_A$ ) and radial forces ( $F_R$ ) are permissible for the B side shaft end.

NOTICE! Attachments must not cause rubbing (danger of excessive temperatures and sparking) or impair the necessary flow of cooling air.

#### **1.3.6 Electrical connection**

The connection cables must be passed through the cable glands in the terminal box. The terminal box must be sealed against dust and water. The mains voltage and frequency must conform to the data on the rating plate.  $\pm 5$  % voltage or  $\pm 2$  % frequency deviations are permissible without reduction of the power. The connection and configuration of the jumpers must be made according to the circuit diagram in the terminal box.

Please refer to the following table for the labelling of the auxiliary terminals

Auxiliary terminal designation						
Additional equipment	Labelling of auxiliary terminals	Comments				
	New: EN 60034-8					
Thermistor	TP1 – TP2	Switch-off				
	1TP1 – 1TP2	Warning Winding 1				
	2TP1 – 2TP2	Switch-off Winding 1				
	3TP1 – 3TP2	Warning Winding 2				
	4TP1 – 4TP2	Switch-off Winding 2				
Option: TF	5TP1 – 5TP2	Brake				
Bi-motal tomporaturo sonsor	1TB1 – 1TB2	Warning Winding 1				
Normally closed	2TB1 – 2TB2	Switch-off Winding 1				
Option: TW	3TB1 – 3TB2	Warning Winding 2				
	4TB1 – 4TB2	Switch-off Winding 2				
Bi-metal temperature sensor,	1TM1 – 1TM2	Warning Winding 1				
normally open	2TM1 – 2TM2	Switch-off Winding 1				
	3TM1 – 3TM2	Warning Winding 2				
	41M1 – 41M2	Switch-off Winding 2				
PT100	1R1 – 1R2	Winding 1 (Phase U)				
	2R1 – 2R2	Winding 1 (Phase V)				
	3R1 – 3R2	Winding 1 (Phase W)				
KTY	(+) 4R1 – 4R2 (-)	Winding 1				
Silicon temperature sensor	(+) 5R1 – 5R2 (-)	Winding 2				
Standstill heating	1HE1 – 1HE2	Motor heater				
Option: SH	2HE1 – 2HE2	Brake heater				
Capacitor	1CA1 – 1CA2	with operating capacitor 1				
Motor version:	2CA1 – 2CA2	with operating capacitor 2				
EAR/EHB/EST	3CA1 – 3CA2	with starting capacitor 1				
	4CA1 – 4CA2	with starting capacitor 2				
Direct current brake	BD1 – BD2					
Option: BRE						
Option: DBR	Brake 1: BD1-BD2					
	Break2: BD3-BD4					

#### 1.3.7 Operation with frequency inverter

Type SK 63 ./. – SK 225 ./. three phase asynchronous motors are qualified for operation with link circuit inverters according to DIN EN 60034-18-41 (2014).

Please also observe the operating instructions for the frequency inverter which is used.

The insulation system used by NORD consists of suitable varnished copper wire, phase insulation, homogeneous impregnation and groove lining as insulation against earth, and in the standard version is designed for the increased requirements for link circuit inverters.

The maximum permissible FI input voltage is 500 V + 10%. Link circuit voltages in excess of 750 V DC are not permissible. When the motor is warm due to operation, the peak voltages due to the system, the inverter, the cable or the motor must not exceed the following values.



Permissible impulse voltages depending on voltage rise-time

If the values are outside of the permissible range, du/dt or sine wave filters may be used (not the additional voltage drop).

The cable lengths shown in the diagram are for guidance only and may deviate according to the specific conditions.

For additional information for operation with a frequency inverter, especially with regard to information about the maximum speed, thermal design and possible torques, please refer to the current NORD motor catalogue M7000.

#### **1.3.8 Checking the insulation resistance**

Prior to initial commissioning of the motor after a long period of storage or standstill (approx. 6 months) the insulation resistance of the windings must be checked. During and immediately after the measurements, the terminals have voltages which can be dangerous, and must not be touched.

#### Insulation resistance

The insulation resistance of new, cleaned, repaired windings against the housing and against each other is > 200 M $\Omega$ .

#### Measurement

The insulation of the windings against the housing for operation voltages up to 400 V must be measured with 500 V DC. For operating voltages up to 725 V the measurement must be made with 1000 V DC. The temperature of the windings should be  $25^{\circ}C \pm 15^{\circ}C$ .

#### Testing

If the minimum insulation resistance of the winding against earth is less than 50 M $\Omega$ , this may be due to moisture. The windings must then be dried.

The insulation resistance may reduce after long periods of operation. As long as the measured value does not fall below the calculated value for the critical insulation resistance of < 50 M $\Omega$ , operation of the motor may continue. If the value is less than this, the cause must be established and if necessary the windings or parts of the windings must be repaired, cleaned or dried.

#### 1.3.9 Commissioning

#### **i** Information

#### Electromagnetic compatibility

NORD motors comply with the EU-Directive 2014/30/EU. Assembly or installation work must not cause impermissible interference. Immunity from interference must still exist.

**Production of interference:** In cases of large differences of torque (e.g. when driving a piston compressor) a non-sine wave motor current is induced, whose harmonics can cause an impermissible effect on the mains and therefore impermissible production of interference.

With supply by frequency inverters, various strengths of interference are produced according to the design of the frequency inverter (type, interference suppression, manufacturer). The EMC information of the inverter manufacturer must be observed. If a shielded motor supply cable is recommended, the shielding is most effective if a large area is electrically connected to the metal terminal box of the motor (with metal EMC cable gland). With motors with integrated sensors (e.g. thermistors) interference voltages due to the inverter may be produced in the sensor cables.

**Interference immunity:** For motors with integrated sensors (e.g. thermistors) the operator must ensure adequate immunity to interference by the selection of a suitable sensor cable (possibly with screening, with connection as for the motor supply cable) and evaluation device. The information and instructions in the operating instructions for the inverter and all other instructions must be observed before commissioning. After installation of the motor, it must be checked for correct functioning. In the case of brake motors, the correct function of the brake must also be checked.

#### 1.3.10 Disposal

#### NOTICE

Environmental damage

Incorrect disposal of the product may cause damage to the environment.

- Ensure correct disposal
- Comply with current local regulations

Content: aluminium, iron, electronic components, copper

Please observe the additional documentation for the attachments

# 2 Maintenance and servicing

# DANGER!

#### Electric shock

The motor is operated with a dangerous voltage. Touching certain conducting components (connection terminals and supply cables) will cause electric shock with possibly fatal consequences.

Even when the motor is at a standstill (e.g. due to the electronic block of a connected frequency inverter or a jammed drive unit) the connection terminals and supply cables may carry a dangerous voltage. A motor standstill is not identical to electrical isolation from the mains.

Even if the drive unit has been disconnected from the mains, a connected motor may rotate and possibly generate a dangerous voltage.

Installation and work must only be carried out when the motor is at a standstill and is **disconnected** (all phases disconnected from the mains).

Follow the **5 Safety Rules** (1. Switch off the power, 2. Secure against switching on, 3. Check for no voltage, 4. Earthing and short circuiting, 5. Cover or fence off neighbouring live components).

#### WARNING

#### Injury due to movement

Under certain conditions (e.g. switching on the power supply, releasing a holding brake) the motor may start to move. The machinery which it drives (press / chain hoist / roller / fan etc.) may then make an unexpected movement. This may cause various injuries, including to third parties.

Before switching on, secure the danger area by warning and removing all persons from the danger area.

#### 2.1 Safety measures

Before starting any work on the motor or the device, but especially before opening the covers of active components, the motor must be isolated according to regulations. In addition to the main power circuits, any additional or auxiliary circuits must be taken into account.

The usual "5 Safety Rules" e.g. according to DIN VDE 0105 are:

- Disconnect
- Secure to prevent reactivation
- Check for no voltage on all poles
- · Earth and short circuit
- Cover or cordon off adjacent live components

These measures may only be removed when the maintenance work is complete.

Motors must be properly inspected at regular intervals; current national standards and regulations must be complied with. In particular, special attention must be paid to any mechanical damage, free path of the cooling air, abnormal noises and correct electrical connection.

Only original parts may be used as spare parts with the exception of standardised, commercially available and equivalent parts.

Swapping parts between motors of the same type is not permissible.

#### Information

#### **Condensation outlets**

If the motors are designed with closed condensation outlets, these must be opened occasionally in order to allow any accumulated condensation to drain off. Condensation outlets must always be located at the lowest point of the motor. During installation of the motor care must be taken that the condensation outlets point downwards and are closed. Open condensation outlets cause a reduction of the protection class.

#### 2.2 Bearing replacement intervals

Under normal operating conditions, with horizontal installation of the motor, depending on the coolant temperature and the motor speed, the bearing replacement interval [h] for IEC motors is:

	25°C	40°C	60°C
up to 1,800 rpm	approx. 40,000 h	approx. 20,000 h	approx. 8,000 h
up to 3,600 rpm	approx. 20,000 h	approx. 10,000 h	approx. 4,000 h

Under special operating conditions, e.g. vertical motor installation, large stresses due to vibration and shock, or operation with frequent reversing, the operating hours stated above are significantly reduced.

#### 2.3 Maintenance intervals

The motor must be checked weekly, or every 100 operating hours for unusual running noise and/or vibrations.

Please check the roller bearings at an interval of at least 10,000 h and replace them as required. In addition, the electric connections, cables and wires as well as the fan are firmly fastened and free from damage. Furthermore, the function of the insulation system must be checked.

Replace the shaft sealing rings every 10,000 hours.

The surface of the motor must not have any dirt deposits which could impair cooling.

A general overhaul of the motor must be carried out every 5 years.

#### 2.4 General overhaul

For this the motor must be dismantled. The following work must be carried out:

- All components of the motor must be cleaned
- · All components of the motor must be examined for damage
- All damaged components must be replaced
- All roller bearings must be replaced
- All seals and shaft sealing rings must be replaced

The general overhaul must be carried out by qualified personnel in a specialist workshop with appropriate equipment. We urgently recommend that the general overhaul is carried out by NORD Service.

If the drive unit is subjected to special operating conditions, the intervals stated above may be considerably reduced.

## 4 Synchronous motors – special information

The following supplementary or special information applies for these motors.

#### DANGER!

#### Electric shock

The motor is operated with a dangerous voltage. Touching certain conducting components (connection terminals and supply cables) will cause electric shock with possibly fatal consequences.

Even when the motor is at a standstill (e.g. due to the electronic block of a connected frequency inverter or a jammed drive unit) the connection terminals and supply cables may carry a dangerous voltage. A motor standstill is not identical to electrical isolation from the mains.

Even if the drive unit has been disconnected from the mains, a connected motor may rotate and possibly generate a dangerous voltage.

Installation and work must only be carried out when the motor is at a standstill and is **disconnected** (all phases disconnected from the mains).

Follow the **5 Safety Rules** (1. Switch off the power, 2. Secure against switching on, 3. Check for no voltage, 4. Earthing and short circuiting, 5. Cover or fence off neighbouring live components).

#### 4.1 Type designation



#### 4.2 Connection

#### Notice! Hazardous voltages occur at the motor terminals when the motor shaft is rotating!

The motors must only be operated with suitable inverters For energy-efficient operation, the inverter must detect the position of the rotor. Various methods both with and without encoders are available for this. See also  $T180\ 0010$ 

Motors are normally supplied with a star circuit. Some operating points can only be used in a delta circuit. For this, the bridges must be changed according to the circuit diagram in the terminal box cover.

#### 4.3 Encoders

#### Incremental encoder with zero track

The incremental encoder is located under the fan cover and is attached to this. After installation, the zero point offset is measured in the final test. The offset is provided with an adhesive label in the terminal box.

#### Absolute encoders

The synchronisation of the encoder is adjusted by NORD prior to delivery of the geared motor and does not require determination of the offset.

If the encoder is not synchronised, or has come out of adjustment due to an impact or removal of the motor, the zero track of the encoder must be synchronised to the rotor position.

#### 4.4 Commissioning

The choice of inverter must be checked with regard to the motor allocation. In addition to the information in Section 1 "General" the operating manual for the frequency inverter must be observed. Further information can be obtained from T180 0010.

#### 4.5 Maintenance and servicing

CAUTION! The motors contain magnetic components Dismantling without specialist knowledge and suitable aids may result in injuries. This type of work must only be carried out by trained personnel.

# 5 Replacement parts

Please note our spare parts catalogue PL 1090 under <u>www.nord.com</u>. We will be pleased to send you the spare parts catalogue on request.

## 6 Declarations of Conformity



Member of the NORD DRIV	ESYSTEMS Group	DRIVESYSTEMS
Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co. KG		de Baard oor
en cerear non sur 1.1294 se percor, den		indianal cont
In the meaning o	of the directive 2014/34/EU Annex VIII, 2014/30/EU Annex VIII, 2014/30/EU Annex VI	NTORMITY Annex II, 2009/125/EG Annex IV
Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co that the three-phase asynchron	. KG as manufacturer in sole responsib ous motors from the product series	ility hereby declares, Page 1 of
<ul> <li>SK 63*1)/*2) 3D *3) to SK</li> </ul>	225*1)/*2) 3D *3)	
<ol> <li>Power code: S, SA, SX, M, MA</li> <li>Number of poles: 2, 4, 6</li> <li>Additional options</li> </ol>	, MB, MX, L, LA, LB, LX, R, X, Y, A, W -optionally	supplemented by: H, P
with ATEX labeling $\langle E_X \rangle_{II}$	3D Ex tc IIIB T *C Dc	
comply with the following regul	ations:	
ATEX Directive for products	2014/34/EU	OJ. L 096 vom 29.3.2014, S. 309–356
Eco-design Directive	2009/125/EG (VO Nr. 640/2009)	OJ. L 285 vom 31.10.2009, S. 10–35
EMC Directive	2014/30/E0	OJ. L 96 vom 29.3.2014, S. 79–106
Applied standards: EN 60079-0:2012 + A11:2013	EN 60079-31:2014	EN 60529:1991+A1:2000+A2:2013
EN 60034-1:2010+AC:2010	EN 60034-2-1:2014	EN 60034-5:2001+A1:2007
EN 60034-6:1993 EN 60034-9:2005+A1:2007	EN 60034-7:1993+A1:2001 EN 60034-11:2004	EN 60034-8:2007+A1:2014 EN 60034-14:2004+A1:2007
EN 60034-30-1:2014	EN 55011:2009+A1:2010	EN 61000-6-3:2007+A1:2011
EN 61000-6-4:2007+A1:2011	EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009+AC:20	D10 EN 50581:2012
First marking was carried out in	2011.	
Bargteheide, 27.03.2018		
Kich		ABrs
U. Küchenmeister	en e	Dr. O. Sadi
	-	

GETRIEBEBAU Member of the NORD DRIV	NORD ESYSTEMS Group		DRIVESYSTEM
Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co. KG	ton 459/04512 200	-0 Em (40004532.200 - 2253 ) ind	allocations.
E	C/ELL Dock	ration of Con	formity
in the meaning of the direct	tve 2014/34/EU Annex V	II und 2014/30/EU Annex II, 20	09/125/EC Annex IV, 2011/65/EU Annex VI
Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co	. KG as manufact	urer hereby declares,	Page 1
that the three-phase asynchron	ious motors from	the product series	
<ul> <li>SK 63*4/*4 2G *3 to SK</li> <li>1)</li> </ul>	200*1/*2 2G *3	, 	
<ol> <li>Power code: 5, 54, 57, M, MA</li> <li>Number of poles: 2, 4, 6</li> <li>Additional options</li> </ol>	ς MB, MX, L, LΑ, LB, L	x, x, x, t, A, w -optionally s	upplemented by: H, P
with ATEX labeling $\langle E_X \rangle_{II}$	2G Ex eb IIC T3 G	b	
Comply with the following reg	ulation		
ATEX Directive for products	2014/34/EU	,	ABI. L 096 vom 29.3.2014, S. 309–356
Eco-design Directive	2009/125/EG	(VO Nr. 640/2009) A	Bl. L 285 vom 31.10.2009, S. 10-35
EMC-Directive	2014/30/EU	(ab 20. April 2016) A	Bl. L 96 vom 29.3.2014, S. 79–106
RoHS-Directive	2011/65/EU	A	Bl. L 174 vom 1.7.2011, S. 88–110
Applied standards: EN 60079-0:2012+A11:2013 EN 60034-1:2010+AC:2010 EN 60034-6:1993 EN 60034-9:2005+A1:2007 EN 60034-9:2005+A1:2014 EN 61000-6-4:2007+A1:2011	EN 60 EN 60 EN 60 EN 60 EN 55 EN 55	079-7:2015 034-2-1:2014 034-7:1993+A1:2001 034-11:2004 011:2009+A1:2010 204-1:2006+A1:2009+AC:	EN 60529:1991+A1:2000+A2:20 EN 60034-5:2001+A1:2007 EN 60034-8:2007+A1:2014 EN 60034-14:2004+A1:2007 EN 61000-6-3:2007+A1:2011 2010 EN 50581:2012
EC-Type-Examination Certificates: PTB 14 ATEX 3030, PTB 14 ATEX 30 PTB 14 ATEX 3036, PTB 14 ATEX 30 PTB 14 ATEX 3044, PTB 14 ATEX 30	032, PTB 08 ATEX 3 038, PTB 14 ATEX 3 046	024-2, PTB 14 ATEX 3034 040, PTB 14 ATEX 3042	
Notified body for the assessme Physikalisch-Technische Bundesans Identity number: 0102	nt of the quality stalt (PTB) B	management system: lundesallee 100 &116 Braunschweig	
Notified body to issue for the E	C-Type-Examinat	ion Certificate:	
Physikalisch-Technische Bundesans Identity number: 0102	stalt (PTB) B	undesallee 100 8116 Braunschweig	
First marking was carried out in	2008.		
Bargteheide, 01.08.2018	-	di	Mas
U. Küchenmeister		-Vi	Dr. O. Sadi
Managing Director		Technisch	e Geschäftsleitung

Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co. KG			
Getriebebau-Nord-Str. 1 . 22941 Bargteheide, Germ	sany . Fon. +49(0)4532 289 - 0 . Fax +49(0)4532 2	89 - 2253 . Info@nord.	com
Et in the manning of the direct	C/EU Declaration o	f Confor	mity
in the meaning of the direct	e 2014/34/CO Annex VIII 010 2014/30/CO	Annex II, 20039 125	CC Annex IV, 2011/05/CO Annex VI
Getriebebau NORD GmbH & Co that the three-phase asynchron	. KG as manufacturer hereby de ous motors from the product s	eclares, eries	Page 1 of 1
<ul> <li>SK 63*1)/*2) 3G *3) to SK</li> </ul>	200*1)/*2) 3G *3)		
<ol> <li>Power code: S, SA, SX, M, MA</li> <li>Number of poles: 2, 4, 6</li> <li>Additional options</li> </ol>	, MB, MX, L, LA, LB, LX, R, X, Y, A, W -o	ptionally supplen	ented by: H, P
with ATEX labeling (Ex)	3G Ex ec IIC T3 Gc		
comply with the following regul	ations:		
ATEX Directive for products	2014/34/EU	ABI. L	096 vom 29.3.2014, S. 309–356
Eco-design Directive	2009/125/EG (VO Nr. 640/	(2009) ABI. L 2	85 vom 31.10.2009, S. 10-35
EMC-Directive	2014/30/EU (ab 20. April	2016) ABI. L 9	6 vom 29.3.2014, 5. 79–106
RoHS-Directive	2011/65/EU	ABI. L 1	74 vom 1.7.2011, S. 88–110
Applied standards: EN 60079-0:2012+A11:2013	EN 60079-7:2015		EN 60529:1991+A1:2000+A2:201
EN 60034-1:2010+AC:2010 EN 60034-6:1993	EN 60034-2-1:2014 EN 60034-7:1993+A1:2001		EN 60034-5:2001+A1:2007 EN 60034-8:2007+A1:2014
EN 60034-9:2005+A1:2007	EN 60034-11:2004		EN 60034-14:2004+A1:2007
EN 60034-30-1:2014 EN 61000-6-4:2007+A1:2011	EN 55011:2009+A1:2010 EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009	+AC:2010	EN 61000-6-3:2007+A1:2011 EN 50581:2012
First marking was carried out in	2014.		
Bargteheide, 01.08.2018			
Kicl	~	di	the
II Küchanmeister		VIL.	Sadi
O. Kuchenmeister	-	100.0.	Sau

11.0

Miscellaneous

#### SEEPEX. All things flow

#### TERMS & CONDITIONS OF SALE AND/OR REPAIR 8.21

The following terms and conditions shall apply to an order for all or any part of the articles covered by the accompanying offer unless a specific exception is included therein. Acceptance of any order by SEEPEX Inc. is expressly made conditional upon Buyer/Customer's acceptance of SEEPEX Inc. Terms and Conditions of Sale and/or Repair. All prior or future terms, conditions or negotiations (whether written or oral) by Buyer/Customer will therefore be considered void and inapplicable unless otherwise agresd in writing. SEEPEX Inc. reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to refuse any order, unconditionally, for any reason including but not limited to: expiration of the validity of the offer, errors in the offer, unacceptable payment risks, conflicts with contractual commitments made to other potential customers and the chance that a customer may try to enforce an implied warranty or merchantability of the products offered.

#### 1.0 PRICES

1.1. Any prices quoted shall only be valid for orders placed within 30 days from the date of issue of the offer. Prices are Ex-Works SEEPEX Inc. plant (Enon, Ohio USA) in U.S. dollars, unless otherwise agreed. SEEPEX Inc. reserves the right to correct typographical or clerical errors.

#### 2.0 TERMS

2.1. All orders are subject to approval by the SEEPEX Inc. Credit Department. Unless otherwise agreed, if payment for the invoice due is not made in full within thirty (30) days after shipment, late fees of eighteen percent (18%) per year (equivalent to a nominal monthly intersstrate of 15%) will be applied on the unpaid balance until paid in full. The terms and conditions herein set forth are based upon tariffs, taxes, foreign exchange rates, delivery, and other conditions in effect on the date of the Buyer/Customer's order. In the event that such tariffs, taxes, foreign exchange rates, delivery, and/or other conditions is should change prior to delivery of the goods, SEEPEX Inc. reserves the right to charge such increased duties, taxes, or charges to the Buyer/Customer.

2.2 Unless the order includes the appropriate exemption certificates and/or licenses, duties and taxes levied by Federal, State, or other governments are required to be charged automatically at the rate imposed at time of importation/shipment. Any change in law, regulations, or Government practice which causes a variation of any kind in the applicable charges from the amounts stated in the offer shall result in an equivalent change in the price quoted.

2.3. Until payment is made in full, SEEPEX Inc. shall retain the right, without notice, to repossess and/ or retain the items, and/or dispose of them, for its benefit and hold the Buyer/Customer responsible for any loss. Buyer/Customer agrees to enter into any agreements, contracts, or notices required confirming such rights.

2.4. Except where prohibited by law, all products and services paid with a credit card will be subject to a 2.5% convenience fee added to the price of the order. This fee will not exceed our cost of acceptance and will not apply to orders placed through an online platform.

#### 3.0 SECURITY

3.1. In order to secure any obligations due to SEEPEX Inc. from the Buyer/Customer, the Buyer/Customer grants to SEEPEX Inc. a security interest in:

> a. The merchandise covered by the Buyer/Customer's order (s), and

> b. All property and funds of the Buyer/Customer now or hereafter in SEEPEX Inc.'s possession, and in all additions and proceeds of such merchandise and/or property. The Buyer/Customer hereby authorizes SEEPEX Inc. to sign alone any financing statement or statements and to do all and any other things which may be necessary to perfect such security interest.

#### 4.0 CANCELLATION

4.1. After acceptance, orders may be canceled only with the express approval of SEEPEX Inc. In the event of an approved cancellation, the Buyer/Customer shall remain responsible for payment for all work performed and/or material expenses incurred by SEEPEX Inc. as of the time of cancellation. SEEPEX Inc. determines, in its sole discretion, that the Buyer/Customer's financial condition renders the Buyer/Customer unable or unlikely to pay for the order as agreed.

#### 5.0 RETURN

5.1. No credit will be allowed for returns unless SEEPEX Inc. has authorized such returns in writing in advance. A copy of this authorization must be returned with the item as the packing silp. All returns are subject to re-stocking charges and to the SEEPEX Inc. Return Goods Authorization (RGA) Policy, which is available on www. seepex.com, and is incorporated herein by reference. SEEPEX Inc. will only issue credits for items that are covered under warrahy or can be resold. Items that are specially produced for a specific Buyer/Customer, including but not limited to: special hoppers, baseplates, electrical und to item due to: capacial hoppers, baseplates, electrically excluded from consideration for credit. Any items not received in good, dean and uncontaminated condition or items that cannot be put back into stock will not be accepted. Any elastomer material with over three (3) years of fabrication will not be accepted for return and/or credit. Buyers/Customers must pay for all freight associated with any return, including parts or equipment that may be considered to be covered by the limited warranty protection clause below. If an item is deemed to be covered under warranty, the value of the item, and freight associated with the replacement of the item, will be reimbursed by the issuance of a credit to the Buyer/Customer's account. Outstanding RGA's that have declined repair will be scrapped automatically after innely (90) days if no other written instructions are provided.

#### 6.0 SHIPMENT

6.1.

a. Handling Charge: Buyer/Customer shall be responsible for making all arrangements for shipment of the order with a suitable carrier. In the event that Buyer/Customer requests that SEEPEX Inc. make arrangements for shipment, then Buyer/Customer agrees to pay to SEEPEX Inc., in addition to the applicable shipping charges, a handling charge in the amount of 10% of the shipping charges with a minimum \$5.00 to a maximum charge of \$150.00, with special services requiring additional charges.

b. New Articles: Where shipping instructions dictate no specific routing, SEEPEX Inc. will utilize its best judgement in determining routing but shall not be liable for any charges once the goods have reached their agreed upon point of delivery. If changes are made at Buyer/Customer's request in a) the agreed upon point of delivery, or b) in the routing selected by SEEPEX Inc. and if such changes involve additional costs to be incurred, such costs shall be borne exclusively by the Buyer/Customer, unless otherwise agreed in writing.

c. Repair Work: All items for which the Buyer/Customer requests repair or other services by SEEPEX Inc. shall be delivered to and picked up from the SEEPEX Inc. plant (Enon, Ohio USA) unless other-wise agreed in writing. All costs of delivery shall be paid by the Buyer/Customer unless otherwise agreed to in writing prior to shipment. Items returned to SEEPEX Inc. must be returned in good, clean and uncontaminated condition. Any cost of cleaning or decontamination will be charged back to the Buyer/Customer's account at the standard service rate. SEEPEX Inc. has the right to refuse acceptance of any dirty or contaminated shipment that may be suspected of being hazardous.

d. All Orders: On collect freight shipments, cartage charges from plant to carrier are the responsibility of the Buyer/Customer. Tille to articles passes to Buyer/Customer upon delivery to carrier acting as Buyer/Customer's agent subject to any right of retention by SEEPEX Inc. All claims for shortage in, and damages in, shipment or otherwise must be reported to carrier immediately upon receipt with copy or report to ourselves within five (5) business days.

#### 7.0 WARRANTIES & LIABILITY LIMITATIONS

7.1

a. New Articles: SEEPEX Inc. warrants articles of our manufacture against defects in material and/ or workmanship for a period of one (1) year from date of delivery, provided that the articles have been installed, maintained, and operated in strict accordance with SEEPEX Inc. recommendations and instructions. For any pump that Buyer/Customer registers with SEEPEX Inc, the warranty period, as expressed above, shall be extended by two (2) additional years for a total of three (3) years from date of delivery, and provided that the articles are installed, maintained and operated in strict accordance with SEEPEX Inc. recommendations and instructions for the duration of such warranty period. Registration must be confirmed and can be completed online at http://warranty.seepex.us.

b. Repair Work: Defined herein as work and services performed by SEEPEX Inc. SEEPEX Inc. warrants all repair work and services that it performs against defects in workmanship and/or materials for a period of one (1) year from the date of delivery of the repaired articles or for the remainder of the applicable original warranty period under Section 7.1.a., if not yet expired, whichever period is longer.

c. All Orders: All warranty claims shall be submitted promptly in writing to SEEPEX Inc. Any warranty replacement and/or repair shall be made Ex-Works SEEPEX Inc. plant (Enon, Ohio USA). SEEPEX Inc.'s warranty obligation shall be limited to the replacement and/or repair only of defective material and/or workmanship.

# 7.2. In no event shall SEEPEX inc. be liable for any incidential or indirect/consequential loss or damage of whatever kind of nature including but not limited to loss of business income or profils, revenue or loss of production or damage resulting from delay in manufacture or delivery, loss of use or damage to any installation into which the article may be installed, whether artising out of contract or tor.

7.3. Force Majeure: SEEPEX Inc. shall not be liable or responsible to Buyer/Customer or any other party, or be deemed to be in default or breach of its obligations to during or performing any of its obligations, when and to the stems of the substance of the

Set rices, port dealogy of relacing sound as but not limited to shortage of lator, equipment, trailers, trucks, vehicles or other services to unload ships or haut cargo away, or inability or delay in obtaining supples of adequate or suitable materials, or any other event which is beyond the reasonable control of SEPEX Inc. that renders its performance inadvisable, commercially event?. Upon the occurrence of any Force Majeure Event?. Upon the occurrence of any Force Majeure Event?. Upon the occurrence of any Erore Majeure Event?. Upon the occurrence of any Erore Majeure Buyer/Customer or any other party, shall be entitled to terminate the performance of its obligations immediately without Buyer/Customer or any other party, having recourse against SEEPEX Inc., or otherwise suspend performance of its obligations to Buyer/Customer or any funds, monies, wages, compensation or remuneration to Buyer/Customer or any other party, and such performance hall be demed permanently excused and released hereunder or otherwise suspended until such time that SEEPEX Inc. in its sole discretion determines that it can and should resume performance of its obligations, whether in full or in part.

7.4. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, SEEPEX Inc.'s liability to Buyer/Customer on any cause of action shall be limited to the amount paid by the Buyer/Customer on the subject order. SEEPEX Inc. makes no warranites, excress or impled, with respect to articles or products manufactured or provided by any party other than sEEPEX Inc., excrept to transfer to the Buyer/Customer, where permissible, any warranty provided to SEEPEX Inc. by the original manufacturer. On any claims for repersent to articles or products manufacturer. On any claims for repersent of the original manufacturer. On any claims for repersent of and the permissible, any warranty all costs incurred by SEEPEX Inc., which are not underwritten by the original manufactures, shall be borne by the buyer/Customer, Except as provided herein, SEEPEX Inc. expressly disclaims all representations, promises, or warranites, express or implied, with respect to any products, articles, work, or services, including any warranites of merchantability and of fitness for a particular purpose. All warranites made by SEEPEX Inc. shall be void where the goods have been subject to misuse, neglect, damage or alteration. SEEPEX Inc. shall be held free and harmless for many dispute or claim anywhere arising from and relating to infingement of patent, design, trademark, or copy- right of items, sold or repaired under this contract.

#### 8.0 PROPERTY RIGHTS AND RISKS

8.1. SEEPEX Inc. disclaims any liability or responsibility whatsoever with regard to loss or damages to the Buyer/Customer's property while in the possession, custody or control of SEEPEX Inc. for requested repairs or other services, and the Buyer/Customer expressly agrees to indemnify and hold SEEPEX Inc. harmless against any and all claims for such loss or damage.

#### 9.0 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

9.1. Any hazardous materials or the existence of any hazards relative to the condition of any product tendered to SEEPEX Inc. for service or repair work must be disclosed by Buyer/Customer in writing in the RGA Request Form, whether or not required to be disclosed per federal law on the MSDS sheet. Buyer/Customer shall defend, indemnify and hold SEEPEX Inc. hamless from and against any and all claims of injury or damage, including attorney's fees, caused by any hazardous condition or material on or aboout products accepted for service/ repair. This obligation includes but is not limited to claims of bodily injury or death suffered by SEEPEX Inc.

#### 10.0 GENERAL CONDITIONS

10.1. No modification, amendment, rescission, discharge, abandonment or waiver of these terms and conditions shall be binding upon SEEPEX Inc. unless set forth in writing and signed by a duly authorized officer or representative of SEEPEX Inc. In any action or proceeding to enforce these terms and conditions against Buyer/Customer or any other party, SEEPEX Inc. shall be entitled to recover all of its costs and expenses, including reasonable attorney's fees and expenses incurred in connection with such action or proceeding. These terms and conditions shall be governed by and construed in atcordance with the laws of the State of Ohio, and ary contract resulting here from shall be determed to be made in the State of Ohio located in Clark Courty, with respect to any controversy or claim arising out of, or relating to t, any contract resulting from these terms and conditions.

SEEPEX Inc. 511 Speedway Drive Enon, Ohio 45323 USA

T +1 937 864-7150 sales.us@seepex.com www.seepex.com



**SEEPEX** Inc. 511 Speedway Drive Enon, OH 45323 Phone: (937) 864-7150 Fax: (937) 864-7157 sales@seepex.com www.seepex.com

# Service Contacts (listed in order of contact):

# **Representative**

Aqua Solutions 154 W. Grove St., Unit D Middleboro, MA 02346 Phone#: 508-947-5777 Fax#: 508-861-0733

# **SEEPEX Sales Manager**

Chris Davis c/o SEEPEX Inc. 511 Speedway Dr. Enon, OH 45323 Mobile#: 401-479-7103 Email: <u>cdavis@seepex.com</u>

# **SEEPEX Parts & Service**

Andrew Dempsey 511 Speedway Dr. Enon, OH 45323 Phone#: 937-864-7150, ext. 246 Fax#: 937-864-7157 Email: <u>adempsey@seepex.com</u> <u>spareparts.us@seepex.com</u>



# **Installation Checklist**

Customer	
Project Name	
Customer PO No.	
Pump Tag No.'s	
SEEPEX Commission No.	
SEEPEX Order No.	
Pump Type Code	

Note: The following needs to be completed, signed, and returned to above location prior to START-UP.

	Installation Checklist – complete prior to start-up						
No.	Description	Completed by	Date				
1	Pumps, motors, and bases have been installed per instructions and secured to the pump foundation.						
2	Pumps and motors are aligned if separated during installation.						
3	All piping connections are completely tightened.						
4	All piping, valves, and gauges relating to the pumps are installed correctly and securely anchored.						
5	The suction and discharge lines are ready for operation.						
6	All seal flush and drain connections are complete.						
7	Gearboxes/motors have been checked for proper lubrication and supplied breathers installed.						
8	Suction lines have been flushed and clear of all foreign objects.						
9	Pumps have been bumped (motors jogged) to verify proper rotation.						
10	Optional equipment needed for proper operation of pumps to ensure they are functioning properly (i.e. – control panels, pressure switches, dry run protection, etc.).						
11	The power supply to the pump and controls has been completed and is the correct voltage.						
12	Fluid is available. The pumps can be operated sufficiently to complete the test.						
13	All safety guards and shields are in place.						
14	If a piping pressure test is required, check pump accessories for compatibility. Remove if necessary.						

All parts are covered against defects in material and workmanship per SEEPEX Inc.'s warranty. See O&M for specific details. The below date signifies data of installation.

	1	1	
Name	Contractor's Company Name	Date	
	/	1	
Name	Name of Owner's Organization	Date	
	/	1	
Name	SEEPEX Inc. or SEEPEX Inc.'s Representative	Date	



# **Start-Up Plan**

Customer	
Project Name	
Customer PO No.	
Pump Tag No.'s	
SEEPEX Commission No.	
SEEPEX Order No.	
Pump Type Code	

Note: Make certain that signed Installation Checklist has been completed and signed before proceeding.

Start-Up Checklist			
No.	Description	Completed by	Date
1	Installation checklist is complete and signed.		
2	Open all valves on suction and discharge.		
3	Fluid is available (especially for suction lift applications).		
4	Prime the pump.		
5	Verify that gearbox lubrication and vents are correct.		
6	Turn on seal flush – tighten packing if leaking is excessive.		
7	Check mechanical seals for proper installation. Clips removed.		
8	Jog pump motor to verify proper rotation.		
9	Turn on pump.		
10	Check motor amps.		
11	Check discharge pressure.		
12	Check flow rate.		
13	Check TSE and sensor, verify set temperature.		
14	VFD Controlled - check pump in Auto Mode and Manual Mode.		

Note: This is to be signed by a qualified SEEPEX Inc.employee or representative. The below date signifies the date that the start-up was completed.

Date

SEEPEX Inc. / SEEPEX Representative

Owner or / Owner Representative

Company

Company

Signature confirms that to the best of your knowledge, all of the parameters have been met for the successful start-up and operation of the pump listed by commission number/(s) above.

Date



# **Shut-Down Plan**

SEEPEX Inc. 511 Speedway Dr. Enon, OH 45323 Phone (937) 864-7150 Fax (937) 864-7157 www.seepex.com

Customer	
Project Name	
Customer PO No.	
Pump Tag No.'s	
SEEPEX Commission No.	
SEEPEX Order No.	
Pump Type Code	

Shut-Down Checklist			
No.	Description	Completed by	Date
1	Short term:		
1.1	Disconnect power to pump driver local or as required.		
1.2	Close all valves on suction and discharge.		
1.3	Shut off seal water (if applicable).		
2	Long-term: (also follow long term storage per O&M)		
2.1	Follow short term instructions.		
2.2	Rotate pump shaft once per week.		
2.3	Remove drain plug to facilitate drying suction housing.		
2.4	Drain suction housing to prevent freezing.		
2.5	For packing; fill stuffing box with grease.		
2.6	For mechanical seal; fill stuffing box with light oil.		
2.7	If pump is not installed place covers over suction and discharge openings to prevent ingress of foreign substances.		
2.8	Store pump in a cool dry atmosphere.		
2.9	Energize motor heaters if installed.		

Note: This is to be signed by a qualified SEEPEX Inc.employee or representative. The below date signifies the date that the shut-down was completed.

Date

Date

SEEPEX Inc. / SEEPEX Representative

Company

Owner or / Owner Representative

Company

Signature confirms that to the best of your knowledge, all of the parameters have been met for the successful shutdown of the pump listed by commission number/(s) above.



#### **Table of Contents**

1.	Stor	age period	.1
2.	Sco	ре	.1
3.	Tern	ns	.1
4.	Prep	paration of SEEPEX pumps for long-term storage	.1
2	.1	Overview – SEEPEX packaging	.2
2	.2	Preservation and packaging by SEEPEX	.2
5.	Stor	age at customer's location	.3
5	5.1	Handling of the VCI packaging	.3
5	5.2	Storage of the pump	.5
5	5.3	Storage period > 3 months to 3 years	.5
5	5.3.1	Recommissioning after a storage period of > 3 months to 3 years	.5
5	5.4	Storage period > 3 years to 5 years	.6
5	5.4.1	Replace VCI corrosion protection	.6
5	5.4.2	Recommissioning after a storage period of > 3 years to 5 years	10
6.	Noti	ces	10
6	5.1	VCI materials used by SEEPEX	10
6	6.2	Dispose of packaging in an environmentally friendly manner	11
7.	Rele	evant documents	11

#### 1. Storage period

- > 3 months to 3 years ( $\rightarrow$ chapter 5.3)
- > 3 months to 5 years ( $\rightarrow$ chapter 5.4)

#### 2. Scope

SEEPEX pumps for which a storage period > 3 months is planned.

#### 3. Terms

VCI Volatile Corrosion Inhibitor

#### 4. Preparation of SEEPEX pumps for long-term storage

SEEPEX pumps intended for a storage period of >3 months are prepared for long-term storage before delivery by means of appropriate preservation and packaging measures.

For purposes of preservation and packaging, SEEPEX uses VCI materials. The VCI molecules these contain evaporate continuously and form an invisible film on the metal surfaces, which interrupts the electrochemical processes that lead to corrosion. The protective film disappears without residue after the stored materials are unpacked.



#### 4.1 Overview – SEEPEX packaging



- 1 Outer packaging: wooden crate
- 2 Inner packaging: ALU/VCI film for protection against corrosion and ozone
- **3** Resealable bag of VCI foam pads for subsequent VCI supply
- **S** Fastening screws to secure the pump in the shipping crate

#### 4.2 Preservation and packaging by SEEPEX

- Pump is completely assembled.
- The original stator is wrapped in VCI bubble wrap, and is included with the delivery.
- Additional disassembled components are wrapped in VCI bubble wrap and included with the delivery.
- The interior of the pump is protected from corrosion with VCI liquid.
- The gear box and motor are protected from corrosion by the protective atmosphere in the inner packaging.
- The complete unit, including the parts delivered loose, is enclosed in the inner packaging of ALU/VCI film, and is thus protected against corrosion and ozone.
- A resealable bag containing VCI foam pads is attached to the interior of the shipping crate. After any opening of the ALU/VCI film, placing these foam pads in the inner packaging will maintain the corrosion-protection atmosphere.



5. Storage at customer's location

#### 5.1 Handling of the VCI packaging

#### NOTICE

#### Damage to the inner packaging.

The corrosion-protection atmosphere can escape, the corrosion protection will become less effective.

- > Avoid damage to the inner packaging, or reseal immediately with adhesive tape.
- > Avoid opening the inner packaging.

# If opening the inner packaging is unavoidable (e.g. for goods inspection or to remove parts), comply with the following procedure:

> Open inner packaging. Select the smallest opening possible.



- > Perform goods inspection / removal of parts.
- > Remove 1 VCI foam pad from the resealable bag.
- > Then carefully reseal the resealable bag.



When using VCI foam, no hand protection is necessary. Preventive skin protection through the use of skin protection products is recommended!







> Place VCI foam pad through the opening and into the inner packaging.



Heat-seal the opening in the inner packaging using the handheld film sealer.
 Alternatively: Seal the film using adhesive tape.





Carefully seal the outer packaging (crate/cardboard box).
 Screw down the cover of the wooden crate.







#### 5.2 Storage of the pump

- in closed, dry rooms.
- permissible relative humidity < 60%.
- permissible temperature range -5°C to +40°C.
- low-vibration, permissible vibration speed  $\leq$  7.1 mm/s.



Deviating storage conditions and environmental influences must be specified by the customer and checked and approved by SEEPEX before storage.

#### 5.3 Storage period > 3 months to 3 years

When correctly stored ( $\rightarrow$ chapter 5.2) and with undamaged/unopened packaging, the pump can be stored without further measures for up to **max. 3 years**.

5.3.1 Recommissioning after a storage period of > 3 months to 3 years

#### NOTICE

#### Incorrectly assembled components.

Damage to property can occur.

- Before assembly work and recommissioning, observe the operating and assembly instructions for the pump.
- > Remove the packaging/protection materials.
- Assemble components included loose in delivery.
  - Observe operating and assembly instructions for pump.



#### 5.4 Storage period > 3 years to 5 years

When correctly stored ( $\rightarrow$ chapter 5.2) and taking into consideration the measures described in chapter 5.4.1, it is possible to extend the storage period to **up to max. 5 years**.



Storage of the pump for longer than 5 years is not recommended due to natural ageing of the elastomers, greases and oils!

#### 5.4.1 Replace VCI corrosion protection After a storage period of 3 years, replace the VCI packaging and the internal VCI



Approximate illustration

- 1 Outer packaging: wooden crate
- 2 Inner packaging: ALU/VCI film for protection against corrosion and ozone
- 3 Resealable bag of VCI foam pads for subsequent VCI supply
- A Casing covers
- SAG Suction casing

#### NOTICE

#### Contaminants and grease on metallic surfaces.

VCI corrosion protection will become less effective.

- > Only touch metallic surfaces with clean, chloride-free gloves.
- > Carefully open outer packaging (crate/cardboard box).
- > Open inner packaging of ALU/VCI film.
- Remove casing covers from suction casing (SAG).




> Pour VCI liquid (approx. 40 ml) into the suction casing (SAG).



#### Irritant liquid

In the event of contact with skin/eyes, injuries are possible.

- > Avoid contact with skin.
- > Wear protective clothing and protective gloves.
- > Avoid contact with eyes.
- > Wear safety goggles.





Close casing openings.





- > Remove 1 VCI foam pad from the resealable bag.
- > Then carefully reseal the resealable bag.



When using VCI foam, no hand protection is necessary. Preventive skin protection through the use of skin protection products is recommended!





> Place VCI foam pad loose onto the pump.



Contact between the VCI foam and painted surfaces.
Discolouration of the painting is possible. The surface protection is not impaired.
Avoid direct contact between the VCI foam and painted surfaces.



Replace the VCI bubble wrap around the original stator and other components included loose in the delivery.







After saturation, desiccant bags return the moisture to the environment. The corrosion protection will become less effective.

Do not use desiccant bags.



> Lay ALU/VCI film loosely around the pump at a slight distance.



Heat-seal the opening in the inner packaging using the handheld film sealer.
 Alternatively: Seal the film using adhesive tape.

**NOTICE** Damaging the inner packaging can allow the corrosion-protection atmosphere to escape. The corrosion protection will become less effective.

> Avoid damage to the inner packaging, or reseal immediately.





Carefully seal the outer packaging (crate/cardboard box).
 Screw down the cover of the wooden crate.



5.4.2 Recommissioning after a storage period of > 3 years to 5 years



Elastomers, seals, grease and oil are subject to natural ageing. SEEPEX therefore recommends assessment and recommissioning by SEEPEX Customer Service.

# NOTICE

## Incorrectly assembled components.

Damage to property can occur.

- Before assembly work and recommissioning, observe the operating and assembly instructions for the pump.
- Remove the packaging/protection materials.
- Assemble components included loose in delivery.
   Observe operating and assembly instructions for pump.

#### 6. Notices

## 6.1 VCI materials used by SEEPEX

- ALU/VCI flat film SEEPEX ID no.: BDMCOR519000
- VCI bubble wrap SEEPEX ID no.: BDMCOR514054
- VCI foam pads 270x230mm SEEPEX ID no.: BDMCORB514091
- VCI liquid, AVILUB VCI 1410 SEEPEX ID no.: BDMCOR141040

**NOTICE** VCI packaging materials can be used for 1 year if stored in sealed packaging and at room temperature.

> Opened packaging must be closed again carefully after use.



## 6.2 Dispose of packaging in an environmentally friendly manner

When disposing of packaging material:

- > Observe country-specific regulations.
- Packaging materials such as VCI materials, cardboard, synthetic materials, metals, wood or wood shavings should be sent for recycling or reused.

### 7. Relevant documents

Operating and assembly instructions

12.0

Test Report(s)

SEEPEX.API PeALL THINGS FLOWVar			erforma riable S	nce Test peed				Document: Issue: Page:	FO.QA.42e G/ 03/30/2016 1 of 1		
SEEPEX Inc	c. order no.	P02010844	ļ		_	Commission	No.	881591			
Pump Type	e Code	BN 52-6LS			_	Customer Ta	ag No.	n/a			
Customer	Name	Hart Engin	eering Coorp	oration	_	Project Nam	ie	Taunton, MA	- Veolia		
Customer	P.O.	9722.101			Max. test condition <sup>4</sup>		GPM		psi		
Test Liquic	d / Temp. conforms to :	Water / SEEPEX Inc. in	64 terpretation	of DIN 55 350	- )-18-4.2.2 (Te	est Inspection	Certificate) an	d API 676 testin	g requirements	s.	
% Rated flow	Speed	Freq	Motor current	Motor volts	Motor	Suction pressure	Discharge pressure	Standard flow <sup>2</sup>	Actual flow	Flow variance <sup>1</sup>	Acceptable variance <sup>3</sup>
РСТ	RPM	HZ	AMPS	VOLTS	HP	PSIG	PSIG	GPM	GPM	PCT	PCT
			9.9	139							
30%	97.5	17	9.8	139	2.71		22	57.00	52.1	-8.6%	+/- 10
			9.9	139							
			9.6	259							
C00/	405	22.7			4.00		22	444.00	442.0	/	1 1 1 0

								<u>.</u>		=1	
% Rated	Speed	Freq	Motor	Motor	Motor	Suction	Discharge	Standard	Actual	Flow	Acceptable
TIOW	DDM	117	current	VOITS	power	pressure	pressure	flow <sup>-</sup>	TIOW	variance	variance
PCI	RPIVI	HZ	AIVIPS	120	HP	PSIG	PSIG	GPIM	GPIM	PCI	PCI
20%	07 5	17	9.9	139	2 71		22	E7 00	E2 1	9 60/	+/ 10
50%	97.5	17	9.8	139	2.71		22	57.00	52.1	-8.0%	+/- 10
			9.9	159							
60%	195	33.7	9.0	259	1 98		22	11/ 00	113.8	0.2%	+/- 10
0070	155	55.7	9.8	259	4.50		22	114.00	115.0	-0.270	17 10
			10.2	382							
90%	292.5	50.1	10.2	382	7.74		22	171.00	174.1	+1.8%	+/- 10
5070	202.0	0012	10.4	382				1, 1,00		11.070	., 10
			10.3	426							
100%	325	55.8	10.4	426	8.72		22	190.00	195.7	+3.0%	+/- 10
			10.4	426	- -						, -
1 - Shaded	fields are calc	ulated values		-		3 - Acceptable	e variance is de	fined in SEEPEX	document TI.0	)31.01e.	
2 - Standar	d flows taken	from SEEPEX	performance	program.		4 - Maximum	test condition	based on pump	data sheet.		
Shaft seal	leak test										
Seal Test F	Pressure:		25	psig							
Leak checl	k result:	$\checkmark$	Pass		Fail		N/A				
All pumps v	with mechanic	al shaft seals	capable of ru	unning in reve	erse rotation	ı must be run i	n reverse and c	hecked for leal	ks. Reverse rot	ation = clockw	vise rotation
viewed from	m motor end o	of pump. 25 p	psi max test p	ressure for s	uction casing	gs with standa	rd clean out do	ors.			
Other che	cks										
Shaft run-	out measure	d at seal·			0.002	TIR (in )					
	unning protec	tion device:		<b>V</b>	Sot		N/A				
TSE UTY-TU					Set						
Stator rete	ention device	2:			Set		N/A				
Pressurize	suction cash	ng:			Yes		NO		N/A		
Drive infe	rmation										
Drive initio											
Gearbox:	Mfr:	NORD		Serial No.	50476421					- Ratio:	5.1
Motor:	Mfr:	NORD		Serial No.	38784437					-	
Motor dat	a:	10	HP	460	/ 3 /	60	Volts/Phase/	Hz	12.4	Full load am	ps
Motor end	closure:	Х	TEFC		TENV		Explosion pro	oof			
Remarks:											
L									P.E. Stamp be	elow (if req'd)	
Assembled	d by:	KF			Date:	1/5/2022					
Tested by:	:	JL			Date:	1/5/2022					
, Approved	by:	VLL			- Date:	1/12/2022					
Witnessed	l bv:				Date:						
	- 1 -										

Page 186



Document FO.QA.35e

lssue G/ 03.30.16

Sheet 1 (1)

## ITEM

Part name	Branch	Material code	A1
Part number	DRSA10600520AN04XX	Material type	Cast

#### **CUSTOMER ORDER INFO**

SEEPEX Inc. order #	P02010844	Commission No:	881591
Pump Type Code	BN 52-6LS	Customer Tag No.	n/a
Customer Name	Hart Engineering Corporation	Project name	Taunton, MA - Veolia
Customer PO	9722.101		

#### SEEPEX INC. VENDOR (IF APPLICABLE)

SEEPEX Inc. Vendor	n/a	SEEPEX Inc. PO	n/a
-----------------------	-----	----------------	-----

#### **TEST INSTRUMENTS**

Gauge Brand	SPAN	Pressure Range	0-300
Gauge Model	03-0014-T		
Calibration Number	TB 203	Calibration due	8-13-22

# TEST DATA – Per ANSI/HI 3.6 - Test pressure is 1.5 times the Maximum Allowable Working Pressure or 51 psig whichever is greater. Test time is 5 minutes. Not applicable to suction casings with standard clean out doors as doors are rated <2 bar.

Actual Test Pressure	51	psig
Actual Test Time	5	min.
Actual Water Temperature	64	٥F
Actual Air Temperature	69	۰F

Built by:	KF	Date	1-5-22	(PE stamp here)
Tested by:	JL	Date	1-5-22	
Approved by:	VLL	Date	1-12-22	
Witnessed by:		Date		



Document FO.QA.35e

lssue G/ 03.30.16

Sheet 1 (1)

## ITEM

Part name	Casing	Material code	A1
Part number	SAGA10600520AB04BX	Material type	Cast

#### **CUSTOMER ORDER INFO**

SEEPEX Inc. order #	P02010844	Commission No:	881591
Pump Type Code	BN 52-6LS	Customer Tag No.	n/a
Customer Name	Hart Engineering Corporation	Project name	Taunton, MA - Veolia
Customer PO	9722.101		

#### SEEPEX INC. VENDOR (IF APPLICABLE)

SEEPEX Inc. Vendor	n/a	SEEPEX Inc. PO	n/a
-----------------------	-----	----------------	-----

#### **TEST INSTRUMENTS**

Gauge Brand	SPAN	Pressure Range	0-60
Gauge Model	03-0010-T		
Calibration Number	TB 170	Calibration due	9-5-22

# TEST DATA – Per ANSI/HI 3.6 - Test pressure is 1.5 times the Maximum Allowable Working Pressure or 51 psig whichever is greater. Test time is 5 minutes. Not applicable to suction casings with standard clean out doors as doors are rated <2 bar.

Actual Test Pressure	51	psig
Actual Test Time	5	min.
Actual Water Temperature	64	۰F
Actual Air Temperature	69	٥F

Built by:	KF	Date	1-5-22	(PE stamp here)
Tested by:	JL	Date	1-5-22	
Approved by:	VLL	Date	1-12-22	
Witnessed by:		Date		

CEE	DEV			API Pe	erforma	nce Test				Document:	FO.QA.42e
SEE	FEA.				· · · · ·					Issue:	G/ 03/30/2016
ALL TH	INGS FLO	N		va	riable S	peea				Page:	1 of 1
SEEPEX Inc	c. order no.	P02010844				Commission	No.	881592			
Pump Typ	e Code	BN 52-6LS			_	Customer Ta	ag No.	n/a			
Customer	Name	Hart Engine	eering Coorp	oration	_	Project Nam	ie	Taunton, MA	- Veolia		
Customer	P.O.	9722.101			_	Max. test co	ndition <sup>4</sup>		GPM □		psi
Test Liquio	d / Temp.	Water /	64	°F	_						
This report conforms to SEEPEX Inc. interpretation of DIN 55 350-18-4.2.2 (Test Inspection Certificate) and API 676 testing requirements.											
% Rated	Created	E	Motor	Motor	Motor	Suction	Discharge	Standard	Actual	Flow	Acceptable
flow	Speed	Freq	current	volts	power <sup>1</sup>	pressure	pressure	flow <sup>2</sup>	flow	variance <sup>1</sup>	variance <sup>3</sup>
PCT	RPM	HZ	AMPS	VOLTS	HP	PSIG	PSIG	GPM	GPM	РСТ	РСТ
			10.1	141							
30%	97.5	17.1	10.3	141	2.83		22	57.00	54.1	-5.1%	+/- 10
			10.1	141							

			10.1	141							
			9.8	258							
60%	195	33.5	9.6	258	4.96		22	114.00	111.3	-2.4%	+/- 10
			9.8	258							
			10.4	381							
90%	292.5	49.9	10.4	381	7.82		22	171.00	170.2	-0.5%	+/- 10
			10.4	381							
100%	225	FE 0	10.6	426	0.00		22	100.00	100.0	0.00/	. / 10
100%	525	55.6	10.5	426	0.00		22	190.00	190.0	0.0%	+/- 10
1 - Shaded	fields are calcu	lated values	10.5	420		3 - Acceptab	e variance is de	fined in SEEPEX	document TI.0	)31.01e.	
2 - Standar	d flows taken f	rom SEEPEX	performance	e program.		4 - Maximum	test condition	based on pump	data sheet.		
Shaft seal	leak test										
Seal Test F	Pressure:		25	psig							
Leak chec	k result:	~	Pass		Fail		N/A				
All pumps v	with mechanica	al shaft seals	capable of r	unning in reve	erse rotation	n must be run	in reverse and o	checked for leak	s. Reverse rot	ation = clockw	ise rotation
viewed fro	m motor end o	of pump. 25	psi max test	pressure for s	uction casing	gs with standa	ard clean out do	ors.			
Other che	cks										
Shaft run-	out measured	d at seal:			0.002	TIR (in.)					
TSE dry-ru	inning protect	tion device:	:	$\checkmark$	Set		N/A				
Stator rete	ention device	:			Set	$\checkmark$	N/A				
Pressurize	suction casin	ng:		$\checkmark$	Yes		No		N/A		
Drive info	rmation										
Gearbox:	Mfr:	NORD		Serial No.	50476422					Ratio:	5.1
Motor:	Mfr:	NORD		Serial No.	38784438					-	
Motor dat	a:	10	HP	460	/ 3 /	60	_Volts/Phase/	Hz	12.4	Full load am	ps
Motor end	closure:	Х	TEFC		TENV		Explosion pro	oof			
Remarks:											
									P.F. Stamp be	low (if rea'd)	
Assemble	d bv:	KF			Date:	1/5/2022	2		1.2. Stamp be		
Tested by	:				Date:	1/5/2022					
Approved	by:	VLL			Date:	1/12/2022	2				
Witnesseo	l bv:				Date:	.,, _022					
	~,.				-			-			



Document FO.QA.35e

lssue G/ 03.30.16

Sheet 1 (1)

## ITEM

Part name	Branch	Material code	A1
Part number	DRSA10600520AN04XX	Material type	Cast

#### **CUSTOMER ORDER INFO**

SEEPEX Inc. order #	P02010844	Commission No:	881592
Pump Type Code	BN 52-6LS	Customer Tag No.	n/a
Customer Name	Hart Engineering Corporation	Project name	Taunton, MA - Veolia
Customer PO	9722.101		

#### SEEPEX INC. VENDOR (IF APPLICABLE)

SEEPEX Inc. Vendor	n/a	SEEPEX Inc. PO	n/a
-----------------------	-----	----------------	-----

#### **TEST INSTRUMENTS**

Gauge Brand	SPAN	Pressure Range	0-300
Gauge Model	03-0014-X		
Calibration Number	TB 203	Calibration due	1-5-22

# TEST DATA – Per ANSI/HI 3.6 - Test pressure is 1.5 times the Maximum Allowable Working Pressure or 51 psig whichever is greater. Test time is 5 minutes. Not applicable to suction casings with standard clean out doors as doors are rated <2 bar.

Actual Test Pressure	51	psig
Actual Test Time	5	min.
Actual Water Temperature	64	٥F
Actual Air Temperature	69	٥F

Built by:	KF	Date	1-5-22	(PE stamp here)
Tested by:	JL	Date	1-5-22	
Approved by:	VLL	Date	1-12-22	
Witnessed by:		Date		



Document FO.QA.35e

lssue G/ 03.30.16

Sheet 1 (1)

## ITEM

Part name	Casing	Material code	A1
Part number	SAGA10600520AB04BX	Material type	Cast

#### **CUSTOMER ORDER INFO**

SEEPEX Inc. order #	P02010844	Commission No:	881592
Pump Type Code	BN 52-6LS	Customer Tag No.	n/a
Customer Name	Hart Engineering Corporation	Project name	Taunton, MA - Veolia
Customer PO	9722.101		

#### SEEPEX INC. VENDOR (IF APPLICABLE)

SEEPEX Inc. Vendor	n/a	SEEPEX Inc. PO	n/a
-----------------------	-----	----------------	-----

#### **TEST INSTRUMENTS**

Gauge Brand	SPAN	Pressure Range	0-60
Gauge Model	03-0010-T		
Calibration Number	TB 170	Calibration due	9-5-22

# TEST DATA – Per ANSI/HI 3.6 - Test pressure is 1.5 times the Maximum Allowable Working Pressure or 51 psig whichever is greater. Test time is 5 minutes. Not applicable to suction casings with standard clean out doors as doors are rated <2 bar.

Actual Test Pressure	51	psig
Actual Test Time	5	min.
Actual Water Temperature	64	٥F
Actual Air Temperature	69	٥F

Built by:	KF	Date	1-5-22	(PE stamp here)
Tested by:	JL	Date	1-5-22	
Approved by:	VLL	Date	1-12-22	
Witnessed by:		Date		